As you read this manual, you will find Information that is preceded by a symbol NOTICE. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Symbols (A) (I) or (A) (I) on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

 \triangle or \triangle is colour-coded to indicate "danger" (red), "warning" (orange), or "caution" (amber).

Safety Labels P. 91

A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- Safety Labels on the vehicle.
- Safety Messages preceded by a safety alert symbol and one of three signal words: DANGER, WARNING, or CAUTION.
 These signal words mean:

A DANGER

You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

AWARNING

You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

A AWARNING

You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

ACAUTION

You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- Safety Headings such as Important Safety Precautions.
- Safety Section such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.

This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

Owner's Manual Application Terms and Conditions*

General

This application allows your Display Audio to automatically search for owner's manual updates that are specific to your vehicle and Display Audio every time the power mode of the vehicle is set to ON. This application periodically transmits a limited amount of vehicle and device information to our servers: Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Display Audio hardware serial number, preferred language, Internet Protocol (IP) address, transaction log (alerts for or views of updates, update downloads and installation, usage of the owner's manual application), etc. When the application finds an update from the server, it prompts you to download and install.

When your Display Audio searches our servers for updates, we will automatically provide you with the opportunity to update the owner's manual. We will also maintain a log of the updates that are installed on our servers.

Your Personal Data

Should the aforementioned information transmitted to Honda constitute personal information in your region, please note that this information will be treated in strict accordance with the rules and regulations outlined in this notice as well as applicable data protection law.

The terms of our privacy policy are incorporated into these terms by reference and your use of system updates will be subject to the privacy policy. Our privacy policy sets out information about how we and any named third parties will process any personal data we collect from you or that you provide to us, via the utility. (See the Honda website for further details.)

Honda collects, uses, and stores your personal data for the reasons set out below:

Where necessary for Honda's legitimate interests, as listed below, and where our interests are not overridden by your data protection rights.

to deliver owner's manual updates to you;

to allow us to improve and optimize the owner's manual application and services;

to respond to user questions and complaints; and for internal record keeping.

Protecting our legitimate business interests and legal rights. This includes, but is not limited to, use in connection with compliance, regulatory, auditing, legal claims (including disclosure of such information in connection with legal process or litigation) and other ethics and compliance reporting requirements

Honda will also convert personal data into anonymous data and use it (normally on an aggregated statistical basis) for uses such as market research and analysis, to improve the owner's manual, to analyze trends, and to assess the success of software update releases. Aggregated personal information does not personally identify you or any other use of the owner's manual.

Honda may share this data with Honda's world wide support organization or affiliated Honda companies or other third parties engaged by Honda for the purposes of rendering support services in connection with system support.

The on-board owner's manual may be terminated without warning. If service is terminated, please continue to use the owner's manual via Honda's homepage. For vehicles with the manual already installed, it can continue to be used as long as you do not perform a factory reset.

^{*} Not available on all models

System Updates Terms & Conditions

General

Your vehicle has an application that allows your Display Audio to automatically search for Honda software updates that are specific to your Display Audio and its connected devices (initially every one (1) week via Wi-Fi or every four (4) weeks via Telematics Control Unit (TCU)*, queries may occur more or less frequently due to internet outages, retries, direct user action, WAP push from the server or a change in query policy on the Honda servers). This application periodically transmits to our servers a limited amount of vehicle and device information (Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), the Model Type (MT) Identification Number, Hardware and Software Part Number, Serial Number, Software Version, preferred language, Internet Protocol (IP) address, Transaction Log (alert or update viewing, update download and installation, software status), etc.). When the application finds an update from the server, the application initially asks permission to download and install the update. Where available, in your settings menu you may elect to automatically download and install these updates or you may elect to manually update the system.

When your Display Audio searches our servers for updates or alerts, we will automatically provide you with the opportunity to update your devices or transmit the update or alert directly to your Display Audio. We will also maintain on our servers a log of the updates or alerts that are installed.

Your Personal Data

Should the aforementioned information transmitted to Honda constitute personal information in your region, please note that this information will be treated in strict accordance with the rules and regulations outlined in this notice as well as applicable data protection law.

The terms of our privacy notice are incorporated into these terms by reference and your use of system updates will be subject to the privacy notice. Our privacy notice sets out information about how we and any named third parties will process any personal data we collect from you or that you provide to us, via the application. See the Honda website for further details.

Honda collects, uses and stores your personal data for the reasons set out below:

- to deliver the system updates and related services to you;
- to allow us to improve and optimize the system updates products and services;
- to respond to user questions and complaints; and for internal record keeping.
- where necessary for Honda's legitimate interests, as listed below, and where our interests are not overridden by your data protection rights.
- as otherwise described in Honda's Privacy Notice and Vehicle Data Privacy Notice.

Protecting our legitimate business interests and legal rights includes, but is not limited to, use in connection with compliance, regulatory, auditing, legal claims (including disclosure of such information in connection with legal process or litigation) and other ethics and compliance reporting requirements.

Honda will also convert personal data into anonymous data and use it (normally on an aggregated statistical basis) for uses such as market research and analysis, to improve the system updates, to analyze trends, and to assess the success of software update releases. Aggregated personal information does not personally identify you or any other use of the system updates.

Honda may share this data with Honda's worldwide support organization or affiliated Honda companies or other third parties engaged by Honda for the purposes of rendering support services in connection with system support.

* Not available on all models

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

The images throughout this owner's manual (including the front cover) that depict features, equipment, and audio/information screen, meter screens are only examples and may not be representative of your particular model.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Safe Driving P. 37

For Safe Driving P. 38 Seat Belts P. 43 Airbags P. 57

▶ Instrument Panel P 93

Indicators P. 94 Gauges and Driver Information Interface P. 114

Controls P. 127

Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 128 Tailgate P. 143
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 150
Climate Control System P. 196

Features P. 205

Audio System P. 206 Display Audio P. 207

→ Driving P. 309

Before Driving P. 310 Towing a Trailer P. 314 When Driving P. 315
Multi-View Rear Camera P. 436

► Maintenance P. 457

Before Performing Maintenance P. 458 Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 482 Climate Control System Maintenance P. 495

Handling the Unexpected P. 507

Tools P. 508 If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 509
Overheating P. 531 Indicator Coming On/Blinking P. 532

If You Cannot Disengage the Charging Connector P. 547

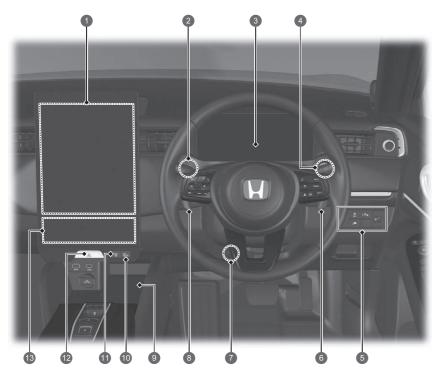
▶ Information P. 551

Specifications P. 552 Identification Numbers P. 553

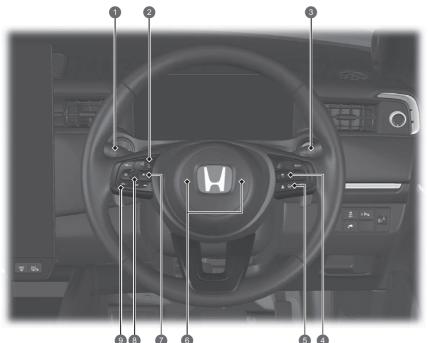
					Quick Reference Guide	P. 6
	Child Safety P. 68	Safety Labels P. 91				
					Safe Driving	P. 37
				1		
					Instrument Panel	D 02
	Security System P. 145 Mirrors P. 168	Windows P. 148 Seats P. 171 Interior Con	venience Items P. 182	10.	matrament runer	P. 93
		Sed ST. 171 Interior Con		10		
					Controls	P. 127
	Audio Error Messages P. 300	Error Messages P. 300 General Information on the Audio System P. 301				
				THE STATE OF THE S	Features	P. 205
	Honda SENSING P. 345 Charging P. 438	Braking P. 416 Energy Economy P. 455	Parking Your Vehicle P. 426		Driving	P. 309
	Changing 1. 150	Energy Economy 1. 155				
	Maintenance Schedule P. 461	Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 467	Replacing Light Bulbs P. 479		Maintenance	D 4E7
	Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 487	12-Volt Battery P. 491 Accessories and Modifications P. 504	Remote Transmitter Care P. 493	- 1	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	P. 457
					Handling the Unexpected	P. 507
	Handling of the Jack P. 522 Fuses P. 540 Emergency T	Power System Won't Start P. 523	If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead P. 528			
	Fuses P. 540 Emergency Towing P. 545 If You Cannot Open the Charge Lid P. 546 If You Cannot Open the Tailgate P. 549			111	Information	P. 551
	Devices that Emit Radio Waves* P. 554	Open Source Licence P. 55	58		Index	P. 559

Contents

Visual Index

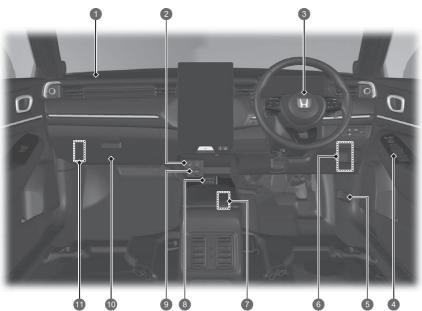


- Audio System
 →P. 206
- ② Brightness Control →P. 166
- 3 System Indicators → P.94
 Gauges → P.114
 Driver Information Interface → P.116
- 4 POWER Button P. 150
- (Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System OFF) Button →P.334
 - Parking Sensor System Button
 - Headlight Adjuster ► 158
 - S Charge Lid Release Button ►>P. 443
- **6** Deceleration Paddle Selector + →P.326
- **⑦** Steering Wheel Adjustments → P. 167
- 8 Deceleration Paddle Selector ← № 326
- Wireless Charger → P. 193
- Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror Button*
 - Rear Demister Button* P. 165
- **(1) (₩)** Windscreen Demister Button **(2)** P. 199
- **B** Climate Control System → P.196

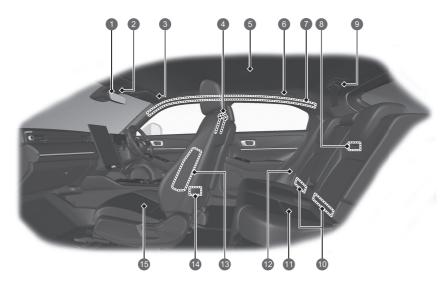


- **1** ₩ Wipers/Washers ► P. 162
- 2 Hands-Free Telephone System Buttons
 P 282
- - Front Fog Lights ←>P. 155
 - (注 Rear Fog Light* ◆2.155
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Buttons → P. 346, 373
- - **≜** Interval Button →P. 346, 384
- 6 Horn (Press an area around .)
- **1** (Home) Button **→**P.116,211
- 8 Left Selector Wheel P. 116, 211
- Audio Remote Controls P.211

Visual Index



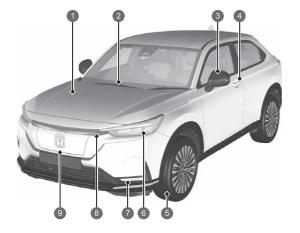
- Passenger's Front Airbag → P.59
- 2 USB Ports P. 209
- 3 Driver's Front Airbag → P.59
- ② Door Mirror Controls →R 169 Master Door Lock Switch →R 141 Power Window Switches →R 148
- **⑤** Bonnet Release Handle **←>**P. 468
- 6 Driver's Side Interior Fuse Box →P.542
- Drive Mode Switch →R329
 Electric Parking Brake Switch →R315
 Automatic Brake Hold Button →R420
- 8 Shift Button →P. 320
- **(1)** Glove Box **←>**P.184
- Passenger's Side Interior Fuse Box ►2.543



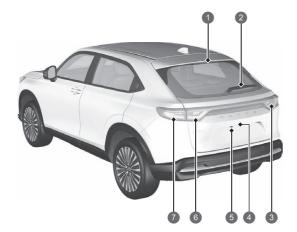
- **1** Rearview Mirror **→**P.168
- 2 Map Lights P. 183
 Ceiling Light P. 182
- 3 Sun Visors Vanity Mirrors
- 4 Seat Belts →P. 43
- **⑤** Ceiling Light* **○**P. 182
- 6 Grab Handle Coat Hooks ►>P.186
- 8 Luggage Area Lights

 → P. 183
- Seat Belt with Detachable AnchorageP.52
- Rear Seat ←>P.175
- ② Seat Belt (Installing a Child Restraint System) → P.84 Seat Belt to Secure a Child Restraint System → P.86
- Side Airbags
 → P.62
- USB Ports
 P.210

Visual Index

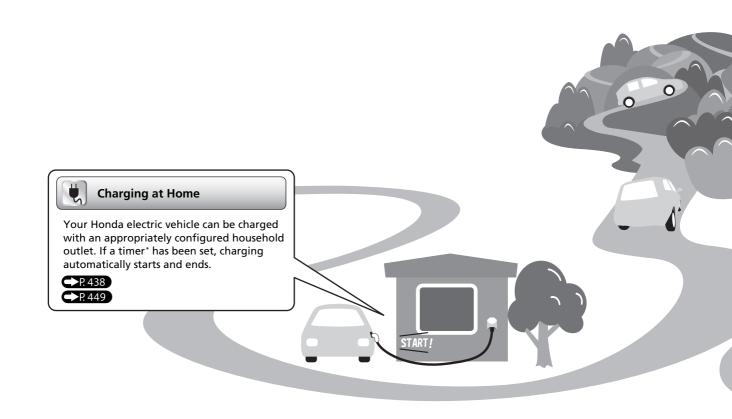


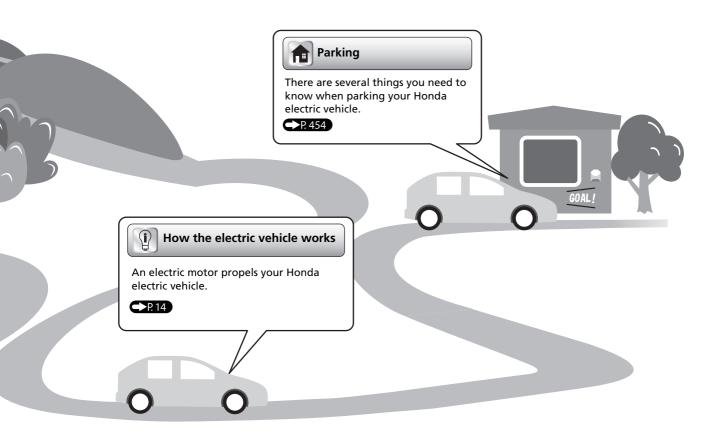
- Maintenance Under the Bonnet → P. 467
- ② Windscreen Wipers →P.162
- 3 Power Door Mirrors →P. 169 Side Turn Signal Lights →P. 479
- **4** Door Lock/Unlock Control →P.131
- **⑤** Tyres **○**P. 487, 509
- 6 Headlights →P. 152, 479
 Position/Daytime Running Lights
 →P. 152, 157, 479
- Front Turn Signal Lights R 153, 479
 Front Fog Lights R 155, 479
- **③ Lid Open Button** → P. 443



- High-Mount Brake Light → P. 480
- 2 Rear Wiper P. 164
- Rear Fog Light* →P. 155, 480
- 4 Opening/Closing the Tailgate →P.143 Tailgate Outer Handle →P.144 Rear Licence Plate Light →P.480
- **⑤** Multi-View Rear Camera → P. 436
- 6 Taillights P. 479, 480
 Back-Up Light P. 480
- Brake/Taillights →P.479,480
 Rear Turn Signal Lights →P.153,479

Making Good Use of Your Honda Electric Vehicle





How the Electric Vehicle Works

Instead of using petrol to power an internal combustion engine, your vehicle uses stored electricity to power an electric propulsion motor. As with a petrol powered vehicle, the efficiency of an electric vehicle (and the vehicle's range) is most impacted by the driver's driving style. Climate control system usage also has a strong impact with heavy usage negatively affecting the vehicle's range.

There are two types of batteries used in this vehicle, a standard 12-volt battery that powers the airbags, the interior and exterior lights, and other standard 12-volt systems, and a high voltage lithium ion battery that is used to power the propulsion motor and recharge the 12-volt battery.

Charging the High Voltage Battery

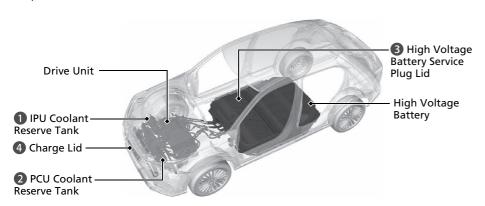
You can recharge the High Voltage battery using a standard household outlet or at a public charging station.

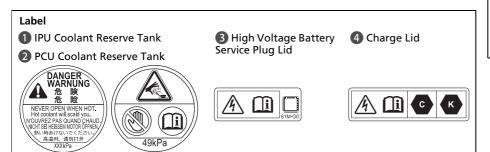


Electric Vehicle Precautions

High Voltage Components, High Voltage Cables and High Temperature Components

Electric vehicles have high voltage components (about 408V maximum) such as the High Voltage battery, high voltage cables (identified by their orange covers), drive unit, and high temperature parts such as the radiator. Labels with handling warnings are attached to these components.





A WARNING

This vehicle has high voltage circuits and parts. Failure to observe the following precautions can result in burns or electric shock.

- Do not remove, disassemble, or replace the high voltage parts, cables (orange) or their connectors.
- Never touch the High Voltage battery service plugs.

In an emergency or during maintenance or repair, the service plugs are removed to cut off the electric flow from the battery. These plugs are in contact with the battery and can cause severe electric shock if not handled properly.

Only a qualified technician should handle any electrical equipment. For inspection and repair, consult a dealer.

High Voltage Battery

The High Voltage battery gradually discharges when the vehicle is not in use. If allowed to discharge too much, the battery may become damaged.

If your vehicle is parked for an extended period of time, during storage for example, periodically recharge the battery to maintain sufficient charge levels. At least once every three months, recharge the High Voltage battery.

Excessive heat can also damage the battery. On hot, sunny days, try to avoid parking your vehicle under direct sunlight.

If the High Voltage battery becomes fully discharged or damaged and you are unable to start the power system as a result, consult a dealer.

Temperature

When storing the vehicle, make sure not to expose it to extremely low temperatures:

If the temperature of the High Voltage battery drops to -30°C or below, the power system will not start. Wait for the High Voltage battery to warm up or move the vehicle to a warmer location. Note using the battery heating system will not help in this case.

Maintenance, Repair, and Disposal

Always consult a dealer regarding maintenance, repair, and disposal. High Voltage batteries that have been removed from disposed vehicles are collected through a dealer. Do not dispose of these batteries yourself.

In Case of a Crash

- Be careful of electric shock hazard.
 - ▶ If a severe crash damaged your vehicle's High Voltage system, there is a possibility of electrical shock due to exposed High Voltage components or wires. If this happens, do not touch any of the High Voltage system components or any of its orange wires.
- Avoid contact with High Voltage battery fluid.
 - ► The High Voltage battery contains a flammable electrolyte that could leak as a result of a severe crash. Avoid any skin or eye contact with the electrolyte as it is corrosive. If you accidentally touch it, flush your eyes or skin with a large quantity of water for at least five minutes, and seek medical attention immediately.
- Use a fire extinguisher for an electrical fire.
 - ▶ Attempting to extinguish an electrical fire with a small quantity of water, from a garden hose for instance, can be dangerous.
- Anytime the vehicle is damaged in an accident, have it repaired by a dealer.

Emergency Shutdown System for the High Voltage System

The emergency shutdown system may activate when the vehicle is impacted by a crash or a collision. When this system activates, the High Voltage system automatically shuts down, and your vehicle no longer moves.

To return the High Voltage system to normal operation, consult a dealer.

AWARNING

High voltage parts and/or the cables (orange) connecting them may be exposed as a result of a crash. Stay clear of these parts as you may be electrocuted.

If High Voltage battery fluid leaks, be careful not to touch the fluid. It can harm your eyes and skin. If it comes in contact with your eyes and skin; flush the affected area with clean water immediately for a few minutes, and seek immediate medical attention.

Regenerative Energy and Regenerative Braking

When decelerating or while driving downhill, the electric motor acts as a generator that recovers a portion of the electrical energy that was used to accelerate the vehicle.

In the following situations, the vehicle generates electricity while decelerating.

- The accelerator pedal is released with the shift position in D.
- The brake pedal is depressed with the shift position in D.
 - ▶ When the High Voltage battery is fully charged or its temperature is too cold/hot, or another factor or factors are affecting the condition of the battery, the regenerative braking system may not be activated.
- The deceleration paddle selector is used with the shift position in D.
 - ▶ You can control the rate of deceleration by using the deceleration paddle selector.

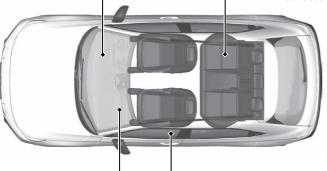
Safe Driving

Airbags (\$2.57)

 Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help to protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

Child Safety R68

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Small children should be properly restrained in a front-facing child restraint system.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system on a rear seat.



Seat Belts R43

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.

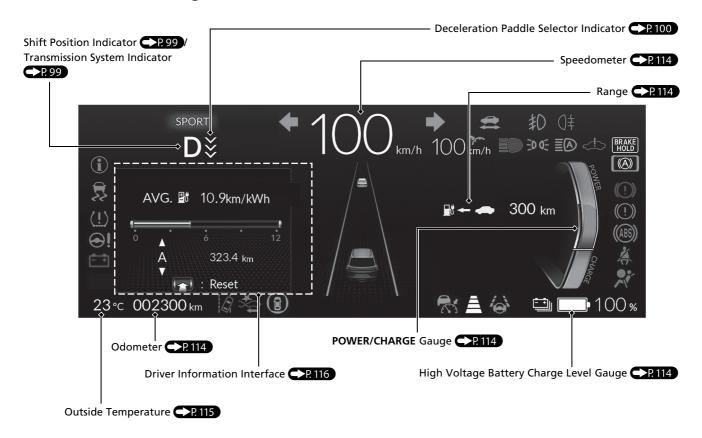
Before Driving Checklist P.42

 Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.



Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

Instrument Panel



Controls CRAPE

Clock CXR223

You can adjust the clock and customize the clock display.

POWER Button CARIED

Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.



Turn Signals P. 153

Turn Signal Control Lever



Lights CR152

Light Control Switches

High Beam

Low Beam

Flashing the high beams

Wipers and Washers

→P. 162

Wiper/Washer Control Lever

MIST —

AUTO: Wiper speed varies

automatically **LO**: Low speed wipe

HI: High speed wipe

Pull towards you to spray washer fluid.



Adjustment Ring

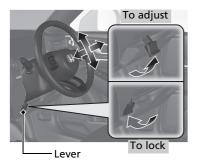
: Low sensitivity+: High sensitivity

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

Steering Wheel (>P.167)

 To adjust, pull the adjustment lever up, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside

○P. 140

Hong Kong and Macau models

 Pull either front door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.

Except Hong Kong and Macau models

 Pull the driver's door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.



Tailgate CR143

 Press the outer handle to unlock and open the tailgate when you carry the keyless remote on you.



Power Door Mirrors

◯ P. 169

- With the power mode in ON, move the selector switch to L or R.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding door mirror button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

Folding Door Mirror Button

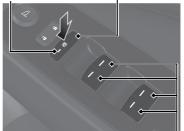


Selector Switch | Adjustment Switch

Power Windows > 148

- With the power mode in ON, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the ON position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.

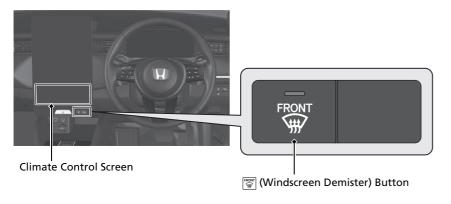
Indicator Power Window Lock Button

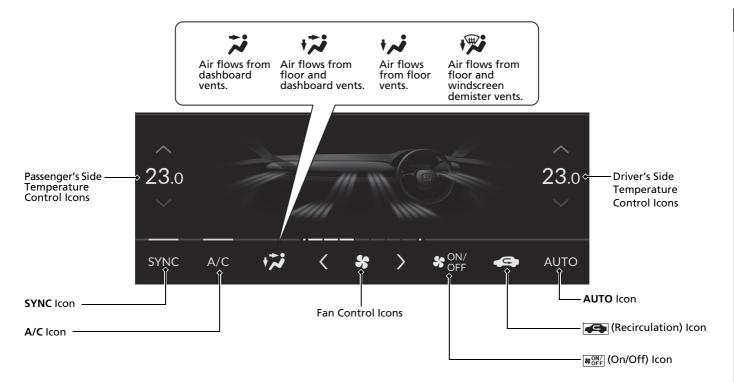


Window Switch

Climate Control System P. 196

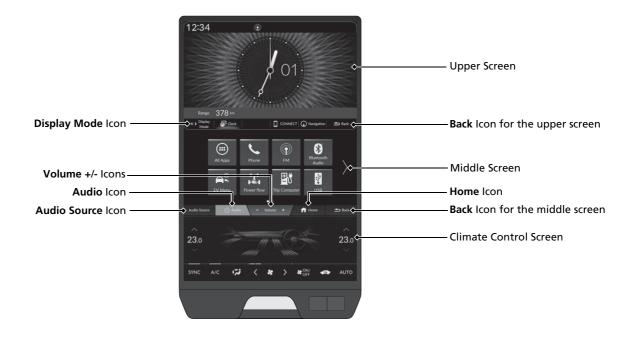
- Select the **AUTO** icon to activate the climate control system.
- Select the solve icon to turn the system on or off.
 Press the button to defrost the windscreen.





Features CARROSS

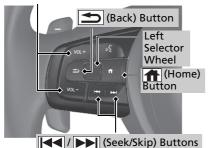
Audio System >P. 206



Audio Remote Controls

◯ P. 211

VOL+/**VOL**- (Volume) Buttons



- VOL +/VOL (Volume) Buttons Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- Left Selector Wheel
 When selecting the audio mode
 Press the (home) button, then roll up
 or down to select (audio) on the
 driver information interface, and then
 press the left selector wheel.

Roll up or down: To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:

FM/iPod/USB/*Bluetooth*® Audio/Apps (Apple CarPlay/Android Auto*)

Depending on a connected device, the displayed modes may be changed.

● ► / ► (Seek/Skip) Buttons

Radio: Press / b to change the preset radio station.

Press and hold / to change the strong station.

Wired connection, USB drive, *Bluetooth®* Audio or Smartphone Connection:

USB drive:

Press and hold to change a folder.

Wired connection:

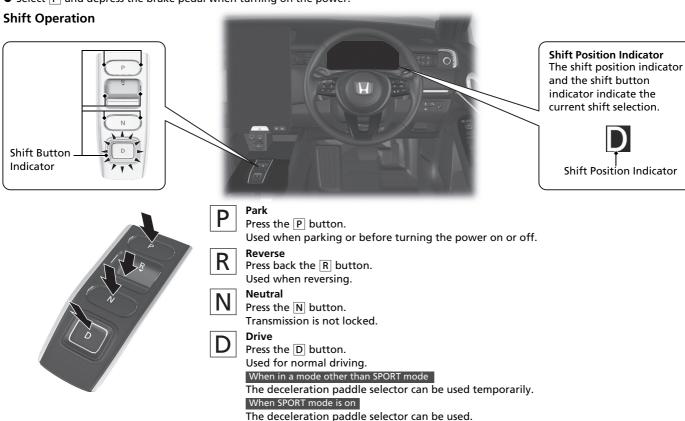
Press and hold / bb to change a song.

Depending on a connected device, the displayed modes may be changed.

Driving CREOD

Electronic Gear Selector (\$\)2320

• Select P and depress the brake pedal when turning on the power.



Shift Position Indicator

Deceleration Paddle Selector C>P.326

When you release the accelerator pedal, you can control the rate of deceleration without removing your hands from the steering wheel. Using the deceleration paddle selector situated on the steering wheel, you can sequentially shift through three stages of deceleration.

Pull the + selector for a few seconds when you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector.

- When in a mode other than SPORT mode. If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change temporarily, and the stage will appear in the gauge.
- When SPORT mode is ON If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change and the stage along with M will appear in the gauge.



Selector

+ Paddle Paddle

Selector

When in a mode other than SPORT mode. the deceleration stage appears.



When SPORT mode is ON, the deceleration stage and M appear. —





VSA On and Off R 334

- The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering and helps to maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA comes on automatically every time you turn the power system on.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA function, press and hold the (VSA OFF) button until you hear a beep.

Deflation Warning System N 336

- Detects a change in tyre conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tyre pressures.
- The Deflation Warning System is turned on automatically every time you turn the power system on.
- A calibration procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

CMBS On and Off

- When a possible frontal collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS can reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- The CMBS is turned on every time you turn the power system on.
- To turn the CMBS on or off, use the safety support of the driver information interface

Honda Sensing CRES45

Assists with functions such as acceleration, braking, and steering in order to reduce the burden on the driver, as well as help to avoid or reduce the severity of collisions.

Honda Sensing has the following functions.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

○P. 349

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a vehicle approaching from the side, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle). The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

Road Departure Mitigation System (2):1862

Hong Kong and Macau models

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel border) or a detected oncoming vehicle.

Except Hong Kong and Macau models

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) (LKAS)

Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

Traffic Jam Assist*

The Traffic Jam Assist system uses a front wide view camera mounted to the upper portion of the windscreen to detect and monitor left and right white (or yellow) traffic lane lines. Based on inputs from the front wide view camera, the system can apply steering torque to keep your vehicle in the centre of the detected lane.

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

◯ P. 410

Informs you with visual and audible alerts when your vehicle is stopped even though the vehicle ahead of you has started moving.

Auto High-Beam (159)

The front wide view camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.

When the system detects vehicles approaching from behind in adjacent lanes, the appropriate indicator comes on, providing assistance when you change lanes.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

○P. 432

Monitors the rear corner areas using the radar sensors when reversing, and alerts you if a vehicle approaching from a rear corner is detected.

The system is convenient when you are backing out of a parking space.

Parking Sensor System



The corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper, driver information interface and audio/information screen let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

Maintenance CREST

Under the Bonnet ()2.467

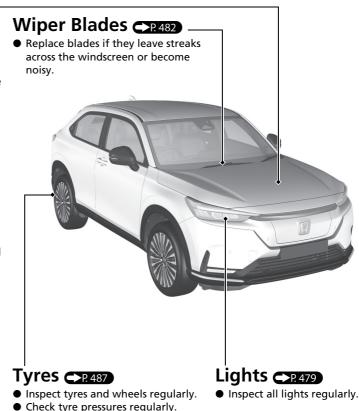
- Check coolants and windscreen washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid.
- Check the 12-volt battery condition monthly.
- Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.



2 Locate the bonnet latch lever, push it to the side, and then raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



When finished, close the bonnet and make sure it is firmly locked in place.



Handling the Unexpected

Flat Tyre P509

• Park in a safe location and repair the flat tyre using the tyre repair kit.



Indicators Come On (\$2,532)

• Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



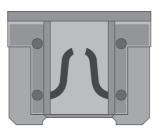
Power System Won't Start (2):523

• If the 12-volt battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



Blown Fuse P.540

 Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



Overheating (CRESSI)

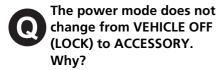
 Park in a safe location. Keep the power mode in ON, and let the power system cool down.

Emergency Towing P545

 Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



What to Do If





- The steering wheel may be locked.
- Move the steering wheel left and right after pressing the POWER button.



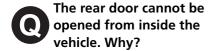


Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?



This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 423





Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle.

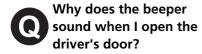
To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.



Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?



If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.





The beeper sounds when:

- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.
- The exterior lights are left on.





The beeper sounds if you move outside the walk away auto lock operating range before the door completely closes.

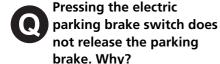
≥ Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)* **≥** 134



Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?



The beeper sounds when the driver, the front passenger, and/or the rear passenger are not wearing their seat belts.





Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.

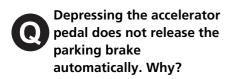


I'm seeing an amber indicator of a tyre with an exclamation point. What is that?



The Deflation Warning System needs attention. If you recently inflated or changed a tyre, you have to recalibrate the system.

▶ Deflation Warning System ▶ ₹336





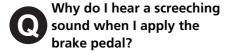
- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Check if the transmission is in P or N. If so, select any other position.

Why does the shift position automatically change to P when I open the driver's door to check for parking space lines when reversing?



- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Close the driver's door and manually change the shift position.

⇒ When opening the driver's door ⇒ P. 323





The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

For Safe Driving	
Important Safety Precautions	38
Your Vehicle's Safety Features	4
Safety Checklist	42
Seat Belts	
About Your Seat Belts	43
Fastening a Seat Belt	49
Seat Belt Inspection	55
Anchorage Points	56
Airbags	
Airbag System Components	57
Types of Airbags	59

	Front Airbags (SRS)	59
	Side Airbags	62
	Side Curtain Airbags	64
	Airbag System Indicators	66
	Airbag Care	67
Child Safety		
	Protecting Child Passengers	68
	Safety of Infants and Small Children	71
	Safety of Larger Children	88

Safety Labels	
Label Locations	9

For Safe Driving

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

Important Safety Precautions

■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

■ Restrain all children

Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

■ Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

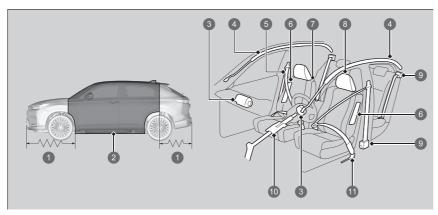
■ Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle

Children, pets, and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

■ Handle high-voltage with care

Familiarise yourself with the charging instructions and warnings supplied in this manual. If using a public charger, also observe the charging station manufacturer's instructions.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



- Crush Zones
- Safety Cage
- § Front Airbags
- 4 Side Curtain Airbags
- Seat Belts
- **6** Side Airbags
- Seats and Seat-Backs
- 8 Head Restraints
- Seat Belt Tensioners
- Collapsible Steering Column
- Outer Lap Pretensioner

The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

∑Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front and outer rear seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

Safety Checklist

For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive. Check if the charging cable is connected to the vehicle and disconnect it if it is. The vehicle will not operate with the cable connected.

Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are
adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the
vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a
crash.

Seats P. 171

Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective
when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller
persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.

■ Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions P. 178

• Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.

Fastening a Seat Belt P. 49

• Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height, and weight.

≧ Child Safety P. 68

Safety Checklist

If the door and/or tailgate open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the tailgate is not completely closed. Close all doors and the tailgate tightly until the message disappears.

Driver Information Interface P. 116



Seat Belts

About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:

- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

■ About Your Seat Belts

AWARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

WARNING: Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

WARNING: Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer

WARNING: Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

WARNING: Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving, the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop, the retractor locks to restrain your body.

The seat belt must be properly secured when using a front-facing child restraint system.

≧ Child Safety P. 68

■ About Your Seat Belts

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

Seat Belt Reminder



■ Front seats

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts.

If you set the power mode to ON and a seat belt is not fastened, the indicator will come on. If the driver or front passenger does not fasten the belt, the indicator will remain on.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while the vehicle is moving until the seat belt is fastened.

Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the power mode is set to ON.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.

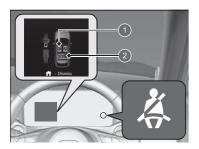
If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds with no one sitting in the front passenger's seat. Check if:

- There is nothing heavy placed on the front passenger seat.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the indicator does not light when the passenger is seated and is not fastened, something may be interfering with the occupant detection sensor. Check if:

- A cushion is placed on the seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



- Fastened
- Unfastened

■ Rear seats

Your vehicle monitors rear seat belt use. The driver information interface notifies you about the status of the rear seat belts use.

The display appears when:

- Any of the rear passenger seat belts are unfastened when the power mode is set to ON.
- Any of the rear passengers fasten or unfasten their seat belt.

The seat belt reminder indicator blinks and the beeper sounds if any rear passenger seat belts has been unfastened while driving.

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats and the outer rear seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts and the outer rear seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.





■ Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioners on both sides of the vehicle also activate.

49

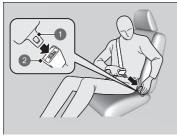
Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat (see illustrations for correct seating posture):

Seats P. 171



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



- **2.** Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.
 - ► Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

>> Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.

If the seat belt appears to be locked in a fully retracted position, firmly pull out on the shoulder belt once, then push it back in.

Then, smoothly pull it out of the retractor and fasten. If you are unable to release the seat belt from a fully retracted position, do not allow anyone to sit in the seat, and take your vehicle to a dealer for repair.

■ About Your Seat Belts P. 43

Seat Belt Inspection P. 55

- 1 Latch Plate
- 2 Buckle



- **3.** Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips (see illustration), then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
- **4.** If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

■ Fastening a Seat Belt

AWARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.

When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchorages to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.



- **1.** Move the anchorage up and down while pulling the shoulder anchorage outward.
- **2.** Position the anchorage so that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder.

∑Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage

After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchorage position is secure.

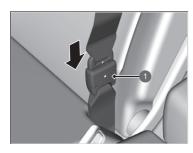
The shoulder anchorage height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

| Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage



1. Pull out the seat belt's small latch plate and the latch plate from each holding slot in the ceiling.

- 1 Latch Plate
- Small Latch Plate



Anchorage Buckle

2. Line up the triangle marks on the small latch plate and anchorage buckle. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted. Attach the belt to the anchorage buckle.

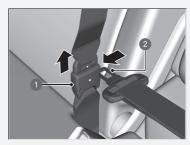
Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage

AWARNING

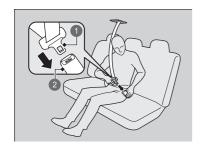
Using the seat belt with the detachable anchorage unfastened increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash.

Before using the seat belt, make sure the detachable anchorage is correctly latched.

To unlatch the detachable anchorage, insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchorage buckle.



- Anchorage Buckle
- 2 Latch Plate



3. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Properly fasten the seat belt the same way you fasten the lap/shoulder seat belt.

- 1 Latch Plate
- 2 Buckle

Advice for Pregnant Women

Consider alternative:

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt. When positioning the seat belt, wear the shoulder belt section across the chest, avoiding the abdomen, and keep the lap belt portion as low as possible across the hips. (See illustration.)



∑Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
 - ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

Seat Belt Inspection

AWARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

WARNING: No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

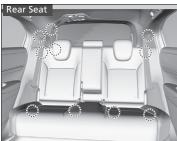
WARNING: It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

WARNING: Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

Anchorage Points



When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images. The front seat has a lap/shoulder belt.



The rear seat has three lap/shoulder belts.

Airbags

Airbag System Components

The front, side, and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked SRS AIRBAG.
- Two side airbags. One for the driver and one for the front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seatbacks. Both are marked SIDE AIRBAG.
- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG.

- An electronic control unit that, when the power mode is in ON, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event, the unit can record such information.
- Automatic seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats.
- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.
- Safing Sensor

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag. Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers. Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- Front airbags: Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbag is designed to supplement seat belt not replace it. Seat belt is the occupant primary restraint system.

Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

▼Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the power mode is in ON.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

■ When front airbags should not deploy

Minor frontal crashes: Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

Side impacts: Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

Rear impacts: Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

Rollovers: Seat belts, and side curtain airbags offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

Side Airbags

The side airbags help to protect the torso and pelvis of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

■ Housing Locations



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

Both are marked SIDE AIRBAG.

Side Airbag Location

Side Airbags

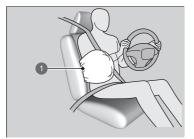
Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer.

Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

Do not let the front passenger lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-tosevere side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

Deployed Side Airbag

■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

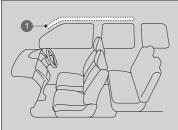
■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag not to deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and passengers in outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

Side Curtain Airbag Location

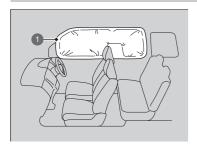
Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

Do not put a coat hanger or hard objects on a coat hook. This could result in injuries if your side curtain airbag inflates.

Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.

1 Deployed Side Curtain Airbag

■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



■ When the power mode is set to ON The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

AWARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: the seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited.

In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

Child Safety

Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

Front Passenger's Sun Visor

AWARNING

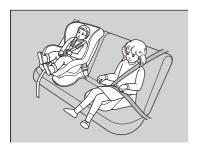


NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

AWARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.



Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:

- An inflating front or side airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirement.

We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries.

Selecting a Child Restraint System P. 73

- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.
- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows, or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

WARNING: Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

D Opening/Closing the Power Windows P 148

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazard and child safety, your vehicle has the warning label on the passenger's side sun visor.

Please read and follow the instructions on this label.

Safety Labels P. 91

Safety of Infants and Small Children

■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, child restraint system until the infant reaches the child restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat.



■ Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system

Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

- ➤ We recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied.
- Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it. If there is, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child restraint system.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

▶ Protecting Infants

AWARNING

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rearfacing child restraint system.

Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front-facing position.

Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

■ Protecting Smaller Children

If a child has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child restraint system, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front-facing child restraint system until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the front-facing child restraint system.



■ Front-facing child restraint system placement

We strongly recommend placing a frontfacing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

▶ Protecting Smaller Children

AWARNING

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front-facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximising your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when the lower anchorage system is not in use. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISOFIX restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

■ Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

Make sure the child restraint system meets the following three requirements:

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system is compliant with safety standards. We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

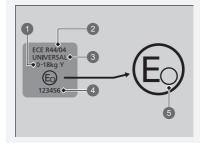
Installation of a lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system is simple.

Lower anchorage-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

Except Hong Kong and Macau models

We recommend a rear-facing or a front-facing Honda genuine ISOFIX child restraint system for infants or small children, respectively. Ask your dealer.

Example of UN Regulation No. 44 approval label



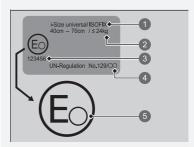
- 1 "Mass group"
- 2 Regulation number
- Category
- 4 Approval number
- 6 Country code

■ Child Restraint Systems Standards

If a child restraint system (whether an i-Size/ISOFIX type or one that is fitted with a seat belt) meets the relevant UN Regulation, it will be affixed with an approval label as shown in the adjacent table. Before purchasing or using any child restraint system, make sure to check the approval label and ensure that it is compatible with your vehicle and the child, and that it complies with the relevant UN Regulation.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Example of UN Regulation No. 129 approval label



- Category
- Size and weight indication
- 3 Approval number
- 4 Regulation number
- **6** Country code

Malaysian model

■ Locations for Child Restraint System Installation



٦	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
5	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
Ť Ľ	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

- *1:Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position and adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.
- *2:Attaching a child restraint system to the rear centre seat may make the side seat belt unusable.

If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint.

Remove the head restraint if it is removable. If interference can be avoided by raising the head restraint, then it is not necessary to remove it. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.

Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.

However, when using the booster cushion only, do not remove the head restraint. Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions.

Detail information for CRS installation

		Seating positi	on and Seat po	sition n	umber	
	Size groups Weight		0	2	3	4
			Weight Front		2nd row	
	S	Stature		Left	Centre*2	Right
	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	Yes	.,	Yes
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg	NO	res	Yes	res
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group I	9-18kg				Yes
amreisar beitea (jesimo)	Group II	15-25kg	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	Group III	22-36kg				
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	Up to 150cm		No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS*4	Refer to genuine CRS list		No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	_		No	No	No	No
	Group 0	Up to 10kg				
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0+	Up to 13kg	No	R3	No	R3
racing fixture (NT/NE/VIE/NS)	Group I	9-18kg				
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18kg	No	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	Up to 150cm		В3	В3	В3	В3

≥ Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

Fixture (CRF)	Description		
ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat		
ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat		
ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat		
ISO/R2X	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems		
ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems		
ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems		
ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems		
ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems		
ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems		
ISO/B2	Reduced width forward-facing booster seat		
ISO/B3	Full width forward-facing booster seat		

- *1:Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position and adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.
- *2:Attaching a child restraint system to the rear centre seat may make the side seat belt unusable.
- *3:Forward facing only
- *4:The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs.
 - Other CRS may also be suitable please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint.

Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.

Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked. However, when using the booster cushion only, do not remove the head restraint.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions.

■ ASEAN Genuine CRS List

Range of application	Child Restraint System	Category	
Under 100cm	Honda Baby & Kids i-Size	i-Size Universal ISOFIX (Rearward facing)	
Over 71cm and 15 months to 100cm	Honda Baby & Kids i-Size	i-Size Universal ISOFIX	

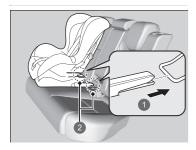
Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors (see illustrations).



1. Locate the lower anchorages under the marks.

Marks



- Rigid Type
- 2 Lower Anchorages

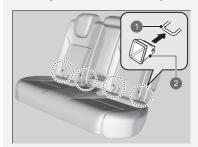
- **2.** Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat, then attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.
 - ➤ When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

≥ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

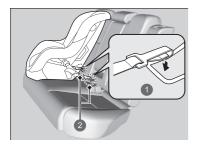
AWARNING

Never attach two child restraint systems to the same anchorage. In a collision, one anchorage may not be strong enough to hold two child restraint system attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.



- Lower Anchorage
- Q Guide-cup



- Flexible Type
- 2 Lower Anchorages



1 Top Tether Anchorage Symbol

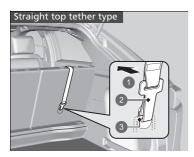
≥ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

WARNING: Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether Anchorage Symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.

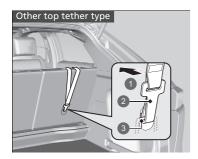
Reinstall the head restraint when the child restraint system is removed.

For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle. A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.



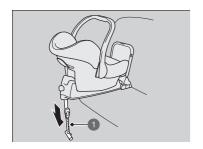
- Ahead of the Vehicle
- 2 Tether Strap Hook
- Anchorage



- Ahead of the Vehicle
- 2 Tether Strap Hook
- Anchorage

Child restraint system with tether strap

- **3.** Remove the head restraint.
 - ▶ Remove the luggage area cover.▶ Luggage Area Cover P. 190
- **4.** Route the tether strap between the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
- **5.** Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
- **6.** Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
- 8. Reinstall the head restraint.
- **9.** Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.



Support Leg

Child restraint system with support leg

- **3.** Extend the support leg until it touches the floor as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
 - Confirm that the section of the floor on which the support leg rests is level. If the section is not level, the support leg will not provide adequate support.
 - ► Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

■ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt





1 Tab

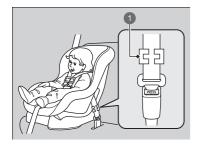
- **1.** Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
- **2.** Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
 - Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.
- **3.** Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.
- **4.** Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
 - When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.
- **5.** Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.
 - When pushing up the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.

≥ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.



- 6. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
- **7.** Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.



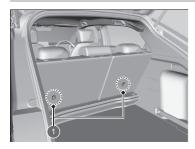
1 Locking Clip

If your child restraint system does not come with a mechanism that secures the belt, install a locking clip on the seat belt.

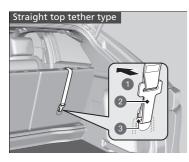
After going through the step 1 and 2, pull up the shoulder part of the belt and make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.

- **3.** Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate. Pinch both parts of the belt together so they do not slip through the latch plate. Unbuckle the seat belt.
- **4.** Install the locking clip as shown in the image. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
- **5.** Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Go to step 6 and 7.

Adding Security with a Tether



1 Tether Anchorage Points



- Ahead of the Vehicle
- 2 Tether Strap Hook
- 3 Anchorage

A tether anchorage point is provided behind each rear outer seating position.

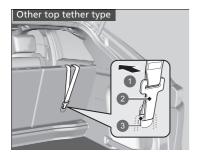
If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

- 1. Remove the head restraint.
 - Remove the luggage area cover.
 - **Luggage Area Cover** P. 190
- Route the tether strap between the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
- **3.** Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
- **4.** Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- **5.** Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
- 6. Reinstall the head restraint.
- **7.** Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

■ Adding Security with a Tether

WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Always use a tether for front-facing child restraint system whether using the seat belt or lower anchorages.



- Ahead of the Vehicle
- 2 Tether Strap Hook
- 3 Anchorage

Safety of Larger Children

Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

Safety of Larger Children

AWARNING

Allowing a child aged 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, and use a booster seat if needed.

Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.



1 Guide

A backrest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the backrest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the backrest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

≫Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.

There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

■ Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

■ Monitoring child passengers

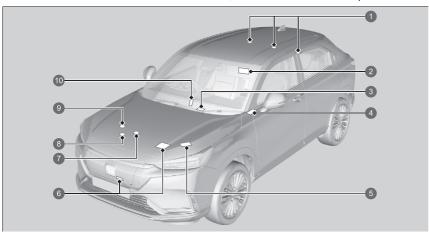
We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

Safety Labels

Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.



- Rear Head Restraint
 P. 179
- 2 Protecting Child Passenger 2 P. 68
- 3 Wireless Charger ▶ P. 193
- 4 High Voltage Battery System
- **5** 12-Volt Battery
- 6 Charging Information Label ▶ P. 15
- Climate Control Coolant Reserve Tank
- 8 Radiator Cap
- IPU Coolant Reserve Tank
- Information for Painting
 P. 503

Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.

ndicators	. 94
Gauges and Driver Information Inte	rfac
Gauges	114
Driver Information Interface	116

Indicators come on/blink depending on the condition of the vehicle. Messages may display on the driver information interface at the same time. Please take the appropriate action outlined in the message, such as contacting a dealer.

(1) *1	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	→P . 96
(1) *1	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	→P . 98
BRAKE HOLD *1	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	→P . 98
*1	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	→ P. 98
> *1	Power System Indicator	→P . 98
#	Ready Indicator	→P . 99
-+ *1	12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator	→P . 99

D	Shift Position Indicator	→P . 99
	Transmission System Indicator	→ P. 99
M談	Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator	→ P. 100
SPORT	SPORT Mode Indicator	→ P. 100
NORMAL	NORMAL Mode Indicator	→ P. 100
\$ ECON	ECON Mode Indicator	→ P. 100
*	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	→ P. 101

-1.		
	Low Charge Indicator (Amber)	→P. 101
(ABS)	*1 Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator	→ P. 102
*	*1 Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	→ P. 102
7	*1 Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	→ P. 103
OFF	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF Indicator	→P . 103
⊕!	*1 Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	→P . 103
(!)	Low Tyre Pressure/ *1 Deflation Warning System Indicator	→ P. 104

^{*1:} When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the power system has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.

(i)	System Message Indicator	→ P. 105	A	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Interval Indicator
++	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	→P . 105	0	Immobilizer System Indicator
≥ 00€	Lights On Indicator	→ P. 106	0	Security System Alarm Indicator
	High Beam Indicator	→ P. 106	*1	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber)
	riigii beaiii iiidicatoi	71.100		Adaptive Cruise Control
≣Ø	Auto High-Beam Indicator	→P . 106	**	(ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White/ Green)
\$ 0	Front Fog Light Indicator	→ P. 106	*1	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)
O‡	Rear Fog Light Indicator*	→P . 106	*	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green)

*1	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)	→ P. 110
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)	→ P. 110
*1	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)	→ P. 110
S	Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator	→ P. 110
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)	→ P. 111
*1	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	→ P. 111
	Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)	→ P. 113

^{*1:} When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the power system has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.

→P. 108

→P. 107

→P. 107

→P. 108

→P. 108

→P. 109

→P. 109

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
and Bra	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	 Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released. 	 The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake applied. Comes on for about 30 seconds when you apply the electric parking brake while the power mode is in ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then goes off. Stays on for about 30 seconds when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF while the electric parking brake is applied, then goes off.
	(Neu)	Comes on when the brake fluid level is low.	 Comes on while driving - Make sure the parking brake is released. Stop in a safe place and check the brake fluid level. What to do when the indicator comes on while driving P. 533

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
(Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system.	 Comes on along with the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (amber) - Immediately stop in a safe place. Contact a dealer for repair. The brake pedal becomes harder to operate. Depress the pedal further than you normally do. ☑ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On P. 535 Comes on along with the ABS indicator - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ☑ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks P. 533 Blinks and the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (amber) comes on at the same time - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. ☑ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On P. 535

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
(1)	Parking Brake and Brake	 Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system. 	Comes on while driving - Avoid high speeds and sudden braking. Take the vehicle to a dealer immediately.
(Amber)	System Indicator (Amber)	 Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system and/or the automatic brake hold system. 	Stays on constantly - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.
BRAKE HOLD	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	Comes on when the automatic brake hold system is on.	▶ Automatic Brake Hold P. 420
	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	Comes on when the automatic brake hold is activated.	▶ Automatic Brake Hold P. 420
>	Power System Indicator	Comes on if there is a problem with the electric vehicle system or plug-in charging system.	 Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. Do not drive displays on the driver information interface - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Ready Indicator	• Comes on when the vehicle is ready to drive.	■ Turning on the Power P. 315
==	12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator	Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.	 Stop in a safe place and contact a dealer immediately. ☑ Checking the 12-Volt Battery P. 491 ☑ If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On P. 532
D	Shift Position Indicator	Indicates the current shift position.	▶ Shifting P. 320
	Transmission System Indicator	Blinks if the transmission system	Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.
		has a problem.	• Do not drive displays on the driver information interface - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.
		Blinks if you cannot select P due to a transmission system failure.	 Set the parking brake when parking. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. ☑ If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message P. 537

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
м 💸	Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator	 Comes on when the paddle selector is pulled. Blinks when deceleration does not occur while pulling the paddle selector. Comes on with M when SPORT mode is selected and pulling the paddle selector. 	Deceleration Paddle Selector P. 326
SPORT	SPORT Mode Indicator	• Comes on when you set the drive mode to SPORT .	▶ SPORT Mode P. 330
NORMAL	NORMAL Mode Indicator	 Comes on when you set the drive mode to NORMAL. 	NORMAL Mode P. 330
\$ ECON	ECON Mode Indicator	• Comes on when you set the drive mode to ECON .	■ ECON Mode P. 331

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	 Comes on if you are not wearing a seat belt when you set the power mode to ON. If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later. Comes on for a while when the rear seat belt is unfastened while the power mode in ON. Blinks while driving if you and/or any passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals. 	 The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the passengers fasten their seat belts. Stays on after you and/or the passengers have fastened the seat belt(s) - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Seat Belt Reminder P. 46
	Low Charge Indicator (Amber)	 Comes on when the High Voltage battery is running low (approximately 15% left). 	• Comes on - There is a decrease in acceleration performance. Recharge the High Voltage battery as soon as possible.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
(ABS)	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator	 Comes on if there is a problem with the ABS. 	• Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function. ▶ Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 423
**	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	 Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected: Supplemental Restraint System Side airbag system Side curtain airbag system Seat belt tensioner 	Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	 Blinks when VSA is active. Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA system, agile handling assist, or hill start assist system. 	• Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ▶ Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System P. 333 ▶ Hill start assist system P. 317
~~		 Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then reconnected. 	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
OFF	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF Indicator	Comes on when you partially disable VSA.	▶ VSA On and Off P. 334
⊕!	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system.	 Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Do not drive displays on the driver information interface - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer. If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On P. 534

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
<u>(!)</u>	Low Tyre Pressure/ Deflation Warning System Indicator	 May come on briefly if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the calibration process is not yet complete. Comes on and stays on when: One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low. The system has not been calibrated. 	 Comes on while driving - Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary. Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures - The system needs to be calibrated. ▶ Deflation Warning System Calibration P. 338
		• Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the deflation warning system.	• Blinks and remains on - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Comes on if the deflation warning system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
(i)	System Message Indicator	Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time.	 While the indicator is on, press the (home) button, and select Information to see the message again. Switching the Display P. 116 Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Take the appropriate action for the message. The driver information interface will not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the (home) button is pressed.
++	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	 Blinks when you operate the turn signal lever. Blinks along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button. 	Does not blink or blinks rapidly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		Blinks along with all turn signals when you depress the brake pedal while the high speed driving.	Emergency Stop Signal P. 425

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
<u>=00</u>	Lights On Indicator	• Comes on when the position, tail, and other external lights are on.	D Lights P. 152
	High Beam Indicator	Comes on when the high beam headlights are on.	_
≣ (A)	Auto High-Beam Indicator	 Comes on when all the operating conditions of the auto high-beam are met. 	▶ Auto High-Beam P. 159
	Front Fog Light Indicator	Comes on when the front fog lights are on.	₽ Fog Lights P. 155
() ‡	Rear Fog Light Indicator*	• Comes on when the rear fog light is on.	▶ Fog Lights P. 155

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
Indicator	Immobilizer System Indicator	Blinks if the immobilizer system cannot recognise the key information.	 Blinks - You cannot start the power system. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, then select the ON mode again. Hong Kong and Macau models Depress and hold the brake pedal before setting the power mode to ON. All models Repeatedly blinks - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.
Indicator	Security System Alarm Indicator	Blinks when the security system alarm has been set.	Security System Alarm P. 146

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
7	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber)	 Comes on if there is a problem with ACC with Low Speed Follow. 	• Comes on while driving - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		 Comes on if the ACC with Low Speed Follow is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then reconnected. 	 Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		 Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded. ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically cancelled. 	 Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. Load Limit P. 313 Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
7 5	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White/Green)	 Lights up in white when you press the button. Lights up in green while the system is in operation. 	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 372
Â	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Interval Indicator	Comes on when Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow indicator comes on.	▶ To Set or Change Following-interval P. 384

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
₩	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS.	• Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		 Comes on if the LKAS is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then reconnected. 	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		 Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded. 	 Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. Load Limit P. 313 Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
<i>'</i> €'	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green)	 Lights up in white when you press the LKAS button. Lights up in green when the LKAS is in operation. 	 ▶ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 389 ▶ Traffic Jam Assist* P. 400

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
*	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)	 Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS or it cannot be used temporarily due to issues such as dirt on the windscreen near the camera. 	 The Safety Support Indicator (Amber) comes on at the same time. Safety Support Indicator (Amber) P. 111
*	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)	• Comes on when the CMBS is off.	Safety Support P. 123
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)	 Comes on if there is a problem with the Road Departure Mitigation System or it cannot be used temporarily due to issues such as dirt on the windscreen near the camera. 	 The Safety Support Indicator (Amber) comes on at the same time. ■ Safety Support Indicator (Amber) P. 111
	Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator	 Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System steering assist is automatically turned off. 	▶ Road Departure Mitigation System P. 362

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)	• Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System is off.	Safety Support P. 123
(😭)	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	 Comes on if there is a problem with the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS, or blind spot information system*. 	Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		 Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded. 	 Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. Load Limit P. 313 Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		Comes on if the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS are deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected and then reconnected.	Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
(分) In		Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation system and/ or CMBS shuts itself off.	 Stays on - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down.
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)		 Stays on - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message are still displayed even after you have cleaned the area around the camera. Front Wide View Camera P. 414 It may come on when the ambient conditions are dark, such as when driving in a tunnel, or at night, dawn, or dusk.
		 Models with blind spot information system Comes on when mud, snow, or ice accumulates in the vicinity of the blind spot information system sensor. Comes on when the temperature of the blind spot information system sensor is high. 	 Comes on while driving - Something may be interfering with the blind spot information system sensor. Check the vicinity of the blind spot information system sensor and remove any obstacles. The system will return to normal when the temperature cools down. ▶ Blind Spot Information System* P. 340

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
1	Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)	 Lights up in green when the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS, and blind spot information system* are on. Lights up in green and grey when one or more of the systems above are off. Lights up in grey when all systems above are off. 	 Road Departure Mitigation System P. 362 Blind Spot Information System* P. 340 Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) P. 349

Gauges and Driver Information Interface

Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, High Voltage battery charge level gauge, and other related indicators. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.

Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in km/h.

■ High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

Shows the remaining High Voltage battery charge level.

■ POWER/CHARGE Gauge

Display the status of electric motor output and High Voltage battery charging.

Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres that your vehicle has accumulated.

Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining power. This estimate is based on the energy consumption of your previous trips and the remaining charge of the High Voltage battery.

The High Voltage battery charge level may decrease under the following conditions:

- When the 12-volt battery has been replaced.
- When the 12-volt battery has been disconnected.
- When the High Voltage battery control system corrects its reading.

The charge level reading will be corrected automatically while driving.

Changes in the temperature of the High Voltage battery can cause the number of indicators in the battery charge level gauge to change.

The driving range displayed is only an estimate and may differ from the actual distance the vehicle can travel.

Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you set the power mode to ON, the **Outside temperature low** message appears on the driver information interface

■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading by up to $\pm 3^{\circ}$ C if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, the LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist*

Shows the current mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, the LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist*

- **⚠** Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 372
- **≥ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 389
- Traffic Jam Assist* P 400

Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h.

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilised.

You can adjust the temperature reading.

▶ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 274

* Not available on all models

Driver Information Interface

The driver information interface shows information such as the estimated travelable distance and energy economy of the vehicle. It also displays messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

When a warning message displays, please check the message and contact a dealer to have the vehicle inspected if necessary.

Please refer to the pages below if the **Reduced stopping power**, **High voltage battery thermal problem**, or **Quick plug-in charging system problem** message is displayed.

☑ If the Reduced stopping power Warning Appears P. 532

☑ If the Propulsion Battery Thermal Runaway Warning Appears P. 539

▶ If the Quick Plug-in Charging System Warning Appears P. 538

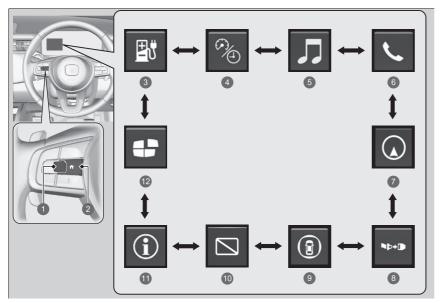
Switching the Display

Press the (home) button, then roll the left selector wheel to scroll to the content you want to see. Press the left selector wheel to see detailed information.

Switching the Display

You can add or delete the meter contents.

▶ Instrument Display Settings P. 124



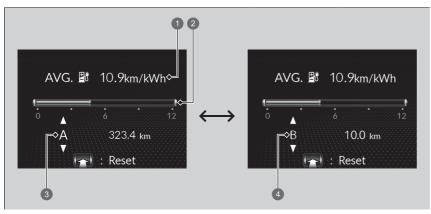
- 1 Left Selector Wheel
- (home) Button
- **3 Energy ≥** P. 118
- **4** Speed & time **№** P. 120
- **⑤ Audio ⋑** P. 121
- **6 Phone ≥** P. 121

- **⊘** Navigation **≥** P. 122
- **8** Seat belts **₽** P. 122
- **9 Safety support ≥** P. 123
- No content
- **1 Information ≥** P. 124
- **1 Instrument display settings ≥** P. 124

Continued 117

■ Energy Consumption / Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



- Average Energy Consumption
- 2 Instant Energy Consumption
- Trip Meter A
- 4 Trip Meter B

■ Trip meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Resetting a trip meter

To reset the trip meter, display it, press the left selector wheel, and then select **Reset**

► The trip meter is reset to 0.0.

■ Average energy consumption

Shows the estimated average energy consumption of each trip meter in kWh/ 100km* or km/kWh*. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average energy consumption is also reset.

■ Instant energy consumption

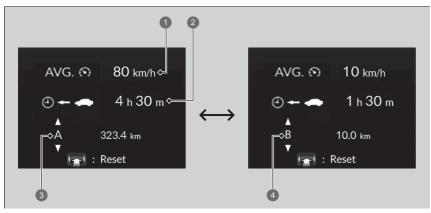
Shows the instant energy consumption as a bar graph in kWh/100km* or km/kWh*.

You can change when to reset the average energy consumption.

▶ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 274

■ Speed/Time/Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



- Average Speed
- 2 Elapsed Time
- Trip meter A
- 4 Trip meter B

■ Trip meter

Trip meter P. 119

■ Elapsed time

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Average speed

Shows the average speed in km/h since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

Audio

Shows the current audio information.

Basic Operation P. 208

Phone

Shows the current phone information.

▶ Hands-Free Telephone System P. 282

Elapsed time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

■ Average speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

▶ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

Continued 121

Navigation

■ Compass

Shows the compass screen.

■ Turn-by-turn directions

When driving guidance is provided by the navigation system, Android Auto* or Apple CarPlay, turn-by-turn directions to your destination appear.

- Refer to the Navigation System Manual
- Android Auto™* P. 252
- **Apple CarPlay** P. 246

Seat Belts

Occurs, under specified conditions, when seat belts are latched or unlatched.

Seat Belt Reminder P. 46

Navigation

You can select whether to have the turn-by-turn display come on or not during the route guidance.

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings
P. 274

You can control some navigation system functions on the driver information interface by scrolling the left selector wheel.

Refer to the Navigation System Manual

Navigation features may not be available for all devices or apps.

Safety Support

Indicates the status of the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS, and blind spot information system*, such as On, Off, or Failure, by colour and letters.

The following colours indicate the status of any of the above-mentioned systems:

- Green: The system is on. Grey: The system is off.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.



- 1 Area Info for the Road Departure Mitigation system
- 2 Area Info for the Blind Spot Information System*
- Area Info for the CMBS
- 4 Road Departure Mitigation system Icon and Status Info
- Blind Spot Information System Icon and Status Info*
- 6 CMBS Icon and Status Info

Safety Support

If a system is indicated by the colour amber, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

To turn each system on or off, first rotate the left selector wheel to switch displays. From the next display, you can select which system to turn on or off.

- **▶** Road Departure Mitigation System P. 362
- **Blind Spot Information System*** P. 340
- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) P. 349

You can also confirm the status of each function by the colour of the indicator.

- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber) P. 110
- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey) P. 110
- Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber) P. 110
- Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey) P. 111
- Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator P. 110
- Safety Support Indicator (Amber) P. 111
- Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)
 P. 113

Information

You can check if there are any active warning messages.

■ Instrument Display Settings

You can choose which icons to display on the home screen.



- 1. Roll the left selector wheel until **Instrument display settings** is selected, then press the left selector wheel.
- **2.** Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select , then press the left selector wheel.

 3. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll between icons, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

If there are multiple warnings or informations, you can roll the left selector wheel to see other warnings.

≥ Instrument Display Settings

Icons that are grey cannot be removed from the home screen.

When you customize settings, shift to P.

■ Remaining Battery

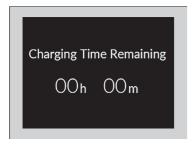


Displays the current status of the High Voltage battery.

The colour of the circle represents the current High Voltage battery status.

- Green: Charging
- Amber: High Voltage battery is running low (approximately 15% left)
- White: When other than the above or when fully charged

■ Charging Time Remaining



Displays the current charging status.

≧ Charging P. 438

■ Remaining Battery

If amber is displayed, charge the High Voltage battery as soon as possible.

Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.

Locking and Uniocking the Doors	
Key	128
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength .	130
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from	the
Outside	131
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from	the
Inside	140
Childproof Door Locks	142
Tailgate	143
Security System	
Immobilizer System	145
Security System Alarm	146

Super Locking *	147
Vindows	
perating the Switches Aroun	d the
Steering Wheel	
POWER Button	150
Lights	152
Headlight Adjuster	158
Auto High-Beam	159
Wipers and Washers	162
Rear Demister/Heated Door M	1irror*
Button	165
Brightness Control	

Adjusting the Steering Wheel	167
1irrors	
Interior Rearview Mirror	168
Power Door Mirrors	169
eats	171
nterior Convenience Items	182
limate Control System	196
•	

* Not available on all models

Locking and Unlocking the Doors

Key

This vehicle comes with the following key:



Use the keys to start and stop the power system, and lock and unlock all the doors, tailgate, and charge lid.

1 Keyless Remote

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

Immobilizer System P. 145

Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust, and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except to replace the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the power system may not activate, and the remote transmitter may not work.

If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

You can turn the climate control system on and off using the keyless remote.

Remote Climate Pre-Conditioning P. 201

■ Built-in Key



The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the keyless remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.

To remove the built-in key, push the release button and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

- 1 Release Button
- 2 Built-in Key

■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

■ Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.

If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot activate the power system, contact a dealer.

Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote to activate the power system; lock and unlock all the doors, tailgate, and charge lid.

In the following cases, activating the power system, locking/unlocking the doors/ tailgate/charge lid may be inhibited, or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted from nearby devices such as quick chargers.
- You are carrying the keyless remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, mobile phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote.

∑Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

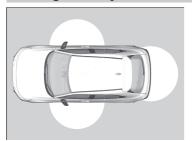
Communication between the keyless remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote's battery. Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.

The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

It is possible to reduce battery consumption by turning off radio wave reception. When you hold down the lock and unlock buttons at the same time for approximately three seconds, the LED will blink twice and radio wave reception will turn off. If you press any button on the keyless remote once, it will begin receiving radio waves again.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

Using the Keyless Access System



When you carry the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and tailgate. You can lock/unlock the doors and tailgate within a radius of about 80 cm from the outside door handle or tailgate outer handle.

■Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors and tailgate.

No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.

Doors and tailgate relocked: The light goes off immediately.

Interior Lights P. 182

∑Using the Keyless Access System

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the keyless access system, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

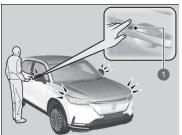
You can lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

Hong Kong and Macau models

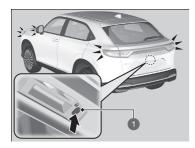
The keyless access system will not lock the vehicle when a door or the tailgate is open.

Continued 131

■ Locking the doors and tailgate



Door Lock Sensor



1 Lock Button

Touch the door lock sensor on the front door or press the lock button on the tailgate.

Hong Kong and Macau models

➤ Some exterior lights flash three times; all the doors and tailgate lock; and the security system sets.

Except Hong Kong and Macau models

➤ Some exterior lights flash once; the beeper sounds once; all the doors and tailgate lock; and the security system sets.

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate while someone else with the keyless remote is within range.
- The door may be unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle or touch a door lock sensor wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by locking or unlocking the doors.
- After locking the door, you have up to 2 seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least 2 seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door may not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate with the keyless remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the door, door glass, and tailgate.

■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate





Outer Handle

Grab the front door handle:

► All doors and tailgate unlock.

Hong Kong and Macau models

Some exterior lights flash once.

Except Hong Kong and Macau models

Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Press the outer handle:

► All doors and tailgate unlock.

Hong Kong and Macau models

► Some exterior lights flash once.

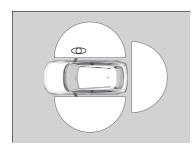
Except Hong Kong and Macau models

- Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.
- **☑** Opening/Closing the Tailgate P. 144

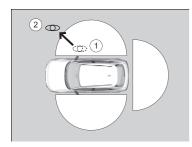
■ Using the Keyless Access System

The light flash and beep* setting can be customized using the audio/information screen.

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings
P. 274



The activation range of the auto lock function is about 1.5 m



■ Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)*

When you walk away from the vehicle with all doors and tailgate closed while carrying the keyless remote, the doors and tailgate will automatically lock.

The auto lock function activates when all doors and tailgate are closed, and the keyless remote is within about 1.5 m radius of the outside door handle or tailgate outer handle. Exit vehicle while carrying keyless remote and close door(s).

- 1) While within about 1.5 m radius of the vehicle.
 - ► The beeper sounds; the auto lock function will be activated
- ② Carry the keyless remote beyond about 1.5 m from the vehicle and remain outside this range for 2 or more seconds.
 - Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all doors and tailgate will then lock.

■Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)*

The auto lock function is set to OFF as the factory default setting. The auto lock function can be set to ON using the audio/information screen. If you set the auto lock function to ON using the audio/information screen, only the remote transmitter that was used to unlock the driver's door prior to the setting change can activate auto lock.

▶ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 274

After the auto lock function has been activated, when you stay within the locking/unlocking operation range, the indicator on the keyless remote will continue to flash until the doors and tailgate are locked.

When you stay beside the vehicle within the operation range, the doors and tailgate will automatically lock approximately 30 seconds after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds.

When you open a door or tailgate after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be cancelled

Under the following circumstances, the auto-lock function will not activate:

- The keyless remote is inside the vehicle.
- The beeper will not sound.
- The keyless remote is taken out of its operational range before all the doors and tailgate are closed.
- The beeper will sound.

To temporarily deactivate the function:

- **1.** Set the power mode to OFF.
- 2. Open the driver's door.
- **3.** Using the lock tab on the driver's door, operate the lock as follows:

Lock \rightarrow Unlock \rightarrow Lock \rightarrow Unlock.

The beeper sounds and the function is deactivated.

To restore the function:

- Set the power mode to ON.
- Lock the vehicle without using the auto lock function
- With the keyless remote on you, move out of the auto lock function operation range.
- Open any door.

■Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)*

The auto lock function does not operate when any of the following conditions are met.

- The keyless remote is inside the vehicle.
- A door, tailgate, or the bonnet is not closed.
- The power mode is set to any mode other than OFF.
- The keyless remote is not located within a radius of about 1.5 m from the vehicle when you get out of the vehicle and close the doors and tailgate.

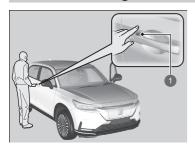
Auto lock function operation stop beeper

After the auto lock function has been activated, the auto lock operation stop beeper sounds for approximately two seconds in the following cases.

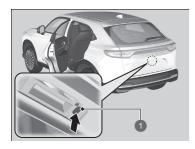
- The keyless remote is put inside the vehicle through a window.
- You are located too close to the vehicle.
- The keyless remote is put inside the tailgate.

If the warning beeper sounds, check that you are carrying the keyless remote. Then, open/close a door and confirm the auto lock activation beeper sounds once.

Lock Presetting*



Door Lock Sensor



1 Lock Button

The vehicle will automatically lock after you lock the doors in advance then close the doors and tailgate.

Activate lock presetting after closing the driver's door.

- **1.** Touch the door lock sensor on the front door, press the lock button on the tailgate or press the lock button on the keyless remote
 - ► Alert sounds and lock presetting is activated.
- 2. Close all doors and the tailgate.
 - Some exterior lights flash and a beeper sounds when vehicle locks.

Make sure the doors and tailgate are locked before moving away from the vehicle.

∑Lock Presetting *

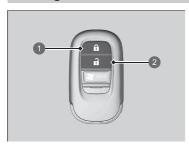
Lock presetting will be reset if a door or the tailgate is opened before the vehicle has locked completely.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

You can turn this function on and off.

► How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 274

Using the Remote Transmitter



- 1 Lock Button
- Unlock Button



■ Locking the doors and tailgate Press the lock button

Hong Kong and Macau models

Some exterior lights flash three times, all the doors and tailgate lock, and the security system sets.

Except Hong Kong and Macau models

Once:

Some exterior lights flash, all the doors, tailgate, and the security system sets.

Twice (within five seconds after the first push):

Some exterior lights flash, the beeper sounds and verifies the security system is set.

■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate Press the unlock button

Hong Kong and Macau models

Some exterior lights flash once, and all doors and tailgate unlock.

Except Hong Kong and Macau models

Some exterior lights flash twice, all doors and tailgate unlocks.

≥ Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

Hong Kong and Macau models

The keyless remote will not lock the vehicle when a door or the tailgate is open.

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.

If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

Replacing the Remote Battery P. 493

Continued 137

■ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the lock or unlock button of the keyless remote does not work, use the key instead.



Fully insert the key and turn it.

- 1 Lock
- Unlock

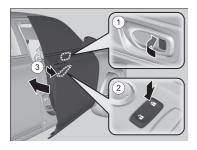
∑Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

When you lock/unlock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors lock/unlock at the same time.

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will sound.

■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.



■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward ① or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction ②, then pull and hold the outside door handle ③. Close the door, then release the handle.

■ Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

■ Lockout prevention system

The doors and tailgate cannot be locked when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.

∑Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

Using the Lock Tab



■ Locking a door

Push the lock tab forward.

■ Unlocking a door
Pull the lock tab rearward.

- 1 To Lock
- 2 To Unlock

Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle



Hong Kong and Macau models

Pull the front door inner handle.

► The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

Except Hong Kong and Macau models

Pull the driver's door inner handle.

► The door unlocks and opens in one motion

1 Inner Handle

≥ Using the Lock Tab

When you lock/unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors and the tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

■Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle

Hong Kong and Macau models

The front door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Except Hong Kong and Macau models

The driver's door inner handle is designed to allow the driver to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that the driver never pull the door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

☑ Childproof Door Locks P. 142

≥ Using the Master Door Lock Switch

Using the Master Door Lock Switch



Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all the doors and the tailgate.

- Whe
 - When you lock/unlock the driver's door using the master door lock switch, all the other doors and the tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

- 1 To Lock
- 2 To Unlock

Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

■ Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

Unlock

2 Lock

Tailgate

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

- Open the tailgate all the way.
 - If it is not fully opened, the tailgate may begin to close under its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the tailgate to close.

Keep the tailgate closed while driving to:

Avoid possible damage.

AWARNING

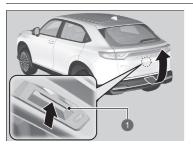
Anyone caught in the path of a tailgate that is being opened or closed can be seriously injured.

Make sure that all people are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

Be careful not to hit your head on the tailgate or to put your hands between the tailgate and the luggage area when closing the tailgate.

Do not allow any passenger in the luggage space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

Opening/Closing the Tailgate



When all the doors are unlocked, the tailgate is unlocked. Press the tailgate outer handle and lift open the tailgate.

If you are carrying the keyless remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.

Outer Handle



Inner Handle

To close the tailgate, grab the inner handle, pull the tailgate down, and push it closed from outside.

Make sure luggage or other items do not touch the tailgate support struts.



1 Tailgate Support Struts

∑Opening/Closing the Tailgate

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the tailgate while someone else with the keyless remote is within range.

Security System

Immobilizer System

This system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the power system.

Pay attention to the following when pressing the **POWER** button:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the **POWER** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the POWER button.
- Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic devices, such as televisions and audio systems, emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle.

Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of your key, contact a dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your vehicle, contact a dealer.

Hong Kong and Macau models

Apply and hold the brake pedal before turning the vehicle on the first time after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected.

Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the tailgate, bonnet, or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not activate if the tailgate or doors are opened with the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently, and some exterior lights flash.

■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the remote transmitter or keyless access system, or turn the power mode to ON. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated

■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.
- The bonnet is closed.
- All doors and the tailgate are locked from outside with the key, remote transmitter, or keyless access system.

■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter or keyless access system, or when the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

Security System Alarm

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

The security system alarm will continue for approximately 5 minutes before the security system deactivates.

The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and an emergency indicator will flash.

Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than 5 minutes.

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the bonnet with the bonnet release handle.

If the 12-volt battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may sound once the 12-volt battery is recharged or replaced. If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will sound.

Super Locking*

The super locking function disables the lock tabs on all doors.

■ To activate the super locking function

- Turn the key in the driver's door towards the vehicle front twice within five seconds.
- Press the lock button on the remote transmitter twice within five seconds.
- Touch the door lock sensor on the door handle or press the lock button on the tailgate twice within five seconds.

■ To cancel the super locking function

Unlock the driver's door with the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

Super Locking *

AWARNING

No one must be inside the vehicle with the super locking set. Persons locked in can get seriously sick or die from the heat built inside the vehicle if left in the sun.

Make sure there is no one inside the vehicle before setting the super locking.

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will sound.

* Not available on all models

Windows

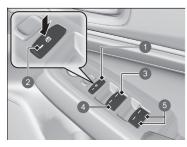
Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the power mode is in ON, using the switches on the doors.

The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all the windows. The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

■ Opening/Closing the Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



Power Window Lock Button

2 Indicator

B Driver's Window Switch

4 Front Passenger's Window Switch

Switch
Switch

■ Manual operation

To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached. **To close:** Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

■ Automatic operation

To open: Push the switch down firmly. **To close:** Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

∑Opening/Closing the Power Windows

AWARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Closing driver's door cancels this function.

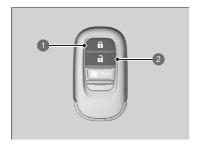
Auto Reverse

If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote



To open: Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

To close: Press the lock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

If the windows stop midway, repeat the procedure.

- 1 Lock Button
- Unlock Button

■ Closing the Window with the key



Lock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

Close

■Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote

You can turn off or on to open the windows with the keyless remote setting using the audio/information screen.

▶ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 274

Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel

POWER Button

■ Changing the Power Mode



If you carry the keyless remote and press **POWER** button without depressing the brake pedal, the power mode will change in this order: VEHICLE OFF. ACCESSORY ON VEHICLE OFF.

VEHICLE OFF:

Vehicle power is turned OFF.

ACCESSORY:

The audio system and some accessories can be used.

ON

All accessories can be used.

Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in $\boxed{\textbf{P}}$ and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the 12-volt battery.

When in this mode: The steering wheel does not lock. You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the keyless access system. Press the **POWER** button twice to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning beep sounds.

™POWER Button

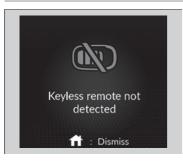
If the keyless remote is set in a storage box or another place where its signal can be interrupted, the power mode may not change.

You may become unable to drive if you leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON, draining the 12-volt battery.

When the power mode is set to ON, the power mode will change to ACCESSORY if the **POWER** button is pressed while the transmission is in a position other than \boxed{P} .

If the power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF to ACCESSORY, press the **POWER** button while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the mode to change.

Keyless Remote Reminder



When the power mode is set to any mode other than OFF and you remove the keyless remote from the vehicle and shut the door, an alarm will sound. If the alarm continues to sound, place the keyless remote in another location.

■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

The alarm will sound from outside the vehicle.

■ When the power mode is in ON

An alarm will sound both inside and outside the vehicle. In addition, a warning indicator will appear on the instrument panel.

When the keyless remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle after the power system has been turned on, you can no longer change the power mode or restart the power system. Always make sure that the keyless remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **POWER** button.

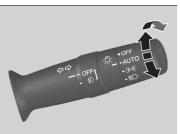
Removing the keyless remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Do not put the keyless remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to sound. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the keyless remote, the warning buzzer may also sound even if the keyless remote is within the system's operational range.

Lights

Headlights/Position Lights

The lights will turn on automatically depending on the ambient brightness. They can also be switched on and off manually.



The exterior lights will switch on automatically when the light switch is set to **AUTO** while the power mode is in ON.

■ Manual operation Headlights/position lights:

Turn the light switch to **■**□.

Position lights:

Turn the light switch to 3005.

Headlight/position lights off:

Turn the light switch to **OFF** and release it while the transmission is in **P** and the parking brake is applied.

- ▶ The lights will come back on automatically when:
- The light switch is turned to **OFF** again and released.
- The transmission is changed out of **P** and the parking brake is released.

∑Lights

When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

≧ Lights On Indicator P. 106

Hong Kong and Macau models

The headlights are suitable for left hand drive and right hand drive, without the need to make any adjustments or masking, as per UN-Regulation No.48 Dover Regulation.

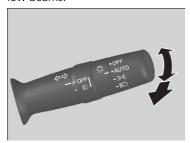
When the position lights are on, the tail and rear licence plate lights will also switch on.

When the light switch is turned to $\boxed{500}$ or $\boxed{50}$ and the power is turned to OFF, a beeper sounds when the driver's door is opened.

When the light switch is turned to **AUTO** and the ambient light levels are low, the headlights and position lights will switch on if you unlock a door. They will switch off when the door is locked.

High Beams

When the headlights are on, push the lever forward. Pull the lever back to return to low beams

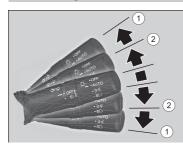


■ Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back to switch on the high beams.

▶ Release the lever to return to low beams.

■ Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ ①: Turn signal

Push the lever up or down based on the direction you want to turn, and the turn signal will blink

■ ②: One-touch turn signal

When you lightly push the lever up or down and release it, the turn signal will blink 3 times.

► If you lightly push the lever in the opposite direction while it is blinking, the blinking will stop.

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover the light sensor.



Do not leave the lights on when the power system is off because it will cause the 12-volt battery to discharge.

∑Turn Signals

The turn signal indicator on the instrument panel will blink when the external turn signal blinks.

■ Turn Signal and Hazard Warning IndicatorsP. 105

Headlight Integration with Wipers

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**. The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

You can turn the headlight integration with wipers function on and off.

▶ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 274

Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, take the keyless remote with you, and close the driver's door.

Hong Kong and Macau models

However, when the switch is in 5005, the position lights remain on.

All models

If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a reminder chime alerting you that the lights are on.

■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.

№ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 274

Fog Lights

The fog lights can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ Front fog lights

Can be used when the position lights or the headlights are on.

■ Rear fog light*

Can be used when the headlights or the front fog lights are on.

■ Front and rear fog light switch*



To turn the front fog lights on:

Rotate the switch up from the **OFF** position to the $\cancel{1}$ position. The $\cancel{1}$ indicator comes on.

To turn the front and rear fog lights on:

Rotate the switch one position up from the $\cancel{1}$ 0 position. The $\cancel{1}$ 10 and $\cancel{1}$ 11 indicators come on.

To turn the rear fog lights on:

Rotate the switch one position up from the $\cancel{1}$ 0 position and then rotate the switch one position down from the $\cancel{1}$ 0 position. The $\cancel{1}$ 1 indicator stays on.

To turn the rear fog light off, turn the headlight switch to the **OFF** position.

■ Front fog light switch*



To turn the front fog lights on: Rotate the switch to the ฆ . The ฆ indicator comes on.

■ Daytime Running Lights

The position/daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The headlight switch is **AUTO** or -005.
- The ambient light is bright.

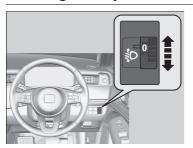
While the vehicle is stopped, if you turn the light switch to **OFF** and release it, the daytime running lights will turn off. When the transmission is changed out of P and the parking brake is released, the lights will come on again. Otherwise, if the light switch is once more turned to **OFF**, the lights will come on again.

Daytime Running Lights

Daytime running lights and the position lights share the same light source.

Daytime running lights are brighter than the position lights.

Headlight Adjuster



You can adjust the vertical angle of the low beam headlights when the position lights or headlights are on.

Turn the adjustment dial to select an appropriate angle for the headlights.

The larger dial number indicates the lower angle.

■ To select the adjustment dial position

Refer to the below table for the appropriate dial position for your vehicle's riding and loading conditions.

Condition	Dial position
A driver	٥
A driver and a front passenger	U
Five persons in the front and rear seats	1
Five persons in the front and rear seats and luggage in the luggage area, within the limit of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	2
A driver and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	3

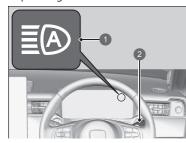
Auto High-Beam

The front wide view camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.

How to Use the Auto High-Beam

■ Activating the system

When all of the following conditions have been met, the auto high-beam indicator comes on and automatically switches between the high beam and low beam, depending on the situation.



- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle

- Auto High-Beam Indicator
- 2 Light Switch

If the auto high-beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out either of the procedures below and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to **EO** then turn the light switch to **AUTO**.

The auto high-beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam if necessary.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognise light sources varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windscreen, refer to the following.

Front Wide View Camera P 414

For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply the windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker, or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

How to turn off the Auto High-Beam System You can turn the auto high-beam system on and off.

▶ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

■ Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

When auto high-beam is active, the headlights switch between high beam and low beam based on the following conditions.

High beam

All of the following conditions must be met before the high beams turn on.

- Your vehicle speed is 30 km/h or more.
- There are no preceding or oncoming vehicles with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are few street lights on the road ahead.

Low beam

One of the following conditions must be met before the low beams turn on.



- Your vehicle speed is 24 km/h or less.
- There is a preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are many street lights on the road ahead.

∑How to Use the Auto High-Beam

In the following cases, the auto high-beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. If the automatic switching operation does not fit for your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

- The brightness of the lights from a preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreen frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources like street lights, electric billboards, and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light towards the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The auto high-beam system keeps the headlight low beam on when:

- Windscreen wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has detected a dense fog.

■ Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedures below. Note that when you do this, the auto high-beam indicator will turn off and the auto high-beam will be deactivated.

Using the lever:

Pull the lever towards you for flashing the high beams then release it or push the lever forward to the high beam position.

- To reactivate the auto high-beam, follow either of the procedures below and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.
- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to and then to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position.

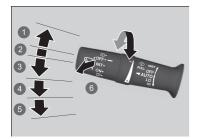
Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to EO.

➤ To reactivate the auto high-beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

Wipers and Washers

■ Windscreen Wipers/Washers



- MIST
- OFF
- AUTO
- **4 LO**: Low speed wipe
- **6** HI: High speed wipe
- 6 Washer

The windscreen wipers and washers can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, AUTO, LO, HI)

Move the lever up or down to change the wiper settings.

■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever toward you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, and then stop.

NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

NOTICE

Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes.

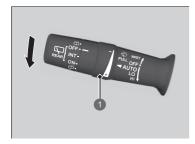
NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen.

Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

If the wipers stop operating due to an obstacle such as the buildup of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place. Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then remove the obstacle.

Automatic Intermittent Wipers



■ Adjustment Ring□: Low Sensitivity

+: High Sensitivity

When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windscreen wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stop in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

■ AUTO sensitivity adjustment

When the wiper function is set to **AUTO**, you can adjust the sensitivity of the rainfall sensor (using the adjustment ring) so that wipers will operate in accordance with your preference.

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.



NOTICE

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

■ Rear Wiper/Washer



- **1NT** (Intermittent)
- **2 ON** (Continuous wipe)
- OFF
- Washer

The rear wiper and washer can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, ON)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

■ Washer (🕮)

Sprays on the rear window while you rotate the switch to this position.

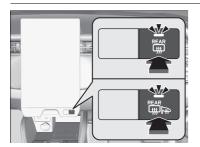
Hold it to activate the rear wiper and to spray the washer. Once released, the washer spray will stop and the rear wiper will return to its selected switch setting after a few sweeps.

■ Operating in reverse

When you shift the transmission to $\boxed{\mathbf{R}}$ with the windscreen wipers activated, the rear wiper operates automatically as follows even if its switch is off.

Front Wiper Position	Rear Wiper Operation
AUTO (Intermittent)	Intermittent
LO (Low speed wipe) HI (High speed wipe)	Continuous

Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror* Button



Press the rear demister and heated door mirror* button to demist the rear window and mirrors* when the power mode is in ON.

The rear demister and heated door mirror* automatically switch off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, it does not automatically switch off.

■ Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror * Button

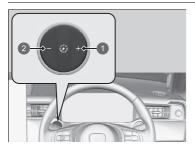
This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been demisted. Also, do not use the system for a long time while the power system is stopped. This may weaken the 12-volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

Models with heated door mirror

When the power mode is set to ON and the outside temperature is below 5°C, the heated door mirror may automatically activate for 10 minutes.

* Not available on all models

Brightness Control



- 1 + Button
- 2

 ☐ Button

The brightness of the gauge is automatically adjusted depending on the ambient brightness.

- The brightness becomes darker when the ambient light is dark.
- The brightness becomes brighter when the ambient light is bright.

■ Adjusting the brightness manually

When the power mode is in ON, you can use the brightness control button to adjust instrument panel brightness.

Brighten: Press the + button.

Dim: Press the _ button.

➤ You can change the setting even when the ambient lighting is bright, but the brightness of the gauge won't change.

You will hear a beep when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum. Several seconds after adjusting the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.

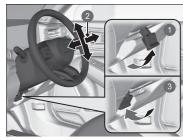
Brightness

■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the driver information interface while you are adjusting it.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



- Release
- Adjust
- 3 Lock

- **1.** While the vehicle is stopped, pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up.
 - ► The steering wheel adjustment lever is lower left side of the steering column.
- **2.** Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
 - ► Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
- **3.** Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down to lock the steering wheel in position.
 - ➤ After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

∑Adjusting the Steering Wheel

AWARNING

Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Mirrors

Interior Rearview Mirror

Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

■ Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror



When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you, based on inputs from the mirror sensor. This feature is always active.

Interior Rearview Mirror

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

Front Seats P. 171

■ Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror

The auto dimming function cancels when the transmission is in $\boxed{\textbf{R}}$.

Power Door Mirrors



- Selector Switch
- 2 Adjustment Switch
- 3 Folding Door Mirror Button

You can adjust the door mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

■ Mirror position adjustment

L/R selector switch: Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

Mirror position adjustment switch: Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

■ Folding door mirrors

Press the folding door mirror button to fold in and out the door mirrors

Reverse Tilt Door Mirror



If activated, the passenger side door mirror automatically tilts downward when you put the transmission into $\boxed{\mathbf{R}}$: this improves close-in visibility on the passenger side of the vehicle when backing up. The mirror automatically returns to its original position when you take the transmission out of $\boxed{\mathbf{R}}$.

To activate this feature, set the power mode to ON and slide the selector switch to the passenger's side.

Continued 169

Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function

■ Folding in the door mirrors

Press the lock button on the keyless remote or the tailgate, or touch the door lock sensor on the either front door.

▶ The mirrors start folding in automatically.

■ Folding out the door mirrors

Press the unlock button on the keyless remote, or grab the door handle on the either front door.

▶ The mirrors start folding out automatically.

■ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function

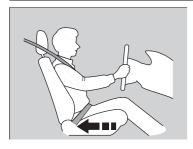
You cannot turn the automatic folding out automatically if they have been folded in using the folding door mirror button.

You can turn the automatic folding door mirror function on and off.

► How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 274

Door mirrors will not fold automatically when locking from inside the vehicle using lock tab or master door lock switch.

Front Seats



Move back to allow sufficient space.

Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

≫ Seats

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

➤ Front Seats

AWARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

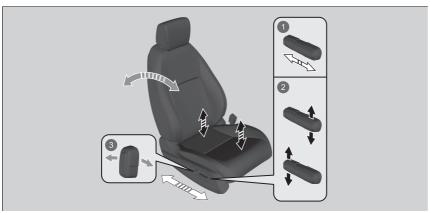
Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

In addition to the seat adjustment, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, in and out. Allow at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest.

Continued 171

Adjusting the Seat Positions

■ Adjusting the front power seat



- **1** Horizontal Position Adjustment Slide the lever to move the seat.
- **2** Height Adjustment (Driver's side only)

 Pull up or push down the lever to raise or lower the seat.
- **3 Seat-back Angle Adjustment**Push forward or pull backward the lever to change the angle.

■ Adjusting the front manual seat



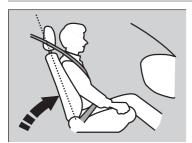
- **1)** Horizontal Position Adjustment
 Pull up on the bar to move the seat, then release the bar.
- 2 Seat-back Angle Adjustment
 Pull up the lever to change the angle.

■ Adjusting the front manual seat

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

Continued 173

Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

■ Adjusting the Seat-Backs

AWARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

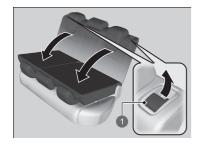
Rear Seats

■ Folding Down the Rear Seats



- **1.** Store the centre seat belt first. Insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchorage buckle.
- **2.** Retract the seat belt into the holder on the ceiling.
 - Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage
 P. 52
- **3.** Lower the rear seat head restraint to its lowest position.

- Anchorage Buckle
- 2 Latch Plate



Release Lever

4. Pull the release lever and fold down the seat.

∑Folding Down the Rear Seats

AWARNING

Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.

The rear seat-backs can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the luggage area.

When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back, and the centre shoulder belt is re-positioned in the holding slot.

Make sure all items in the luggage area or items extending to the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

Remove any items from the rear seat cushion and floor before you fold down the rear seat.

Rear Seat Reminder

This feature alerts you of the possible presence of passengers or items in the rear seats before you exit the vehicle. It activates when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF if the rear doors were opened shortly before or after the vehicle was set to ON.



A reminder appears on the driver information interface and an alert will sound when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

■ Rear Seat Reminder

When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF, the reminder comes on briefly, then the function is deactivated.

The reminder will not work if the power mode has not been set to ON within 10 minutes of operating the rear doors.

The system does not detect passengers in the rear seats. Instead, it can detect when a rear door is opened and closed, indicating that there may be something in the rear seats.

You can turn off the notification setting.

▶ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 274

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the power mode is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

AWARNING

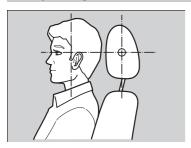
Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

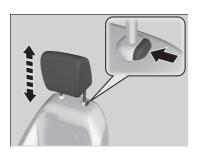
Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions



protection against whiplash and other rearimpact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.

Head restraints are most effective for

Position head in the centre of the head restraint.



To raise the head restraint: Pull it upward. To lower the head restraint: Push it down while pressing the release button. ■ Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions

AWARNING

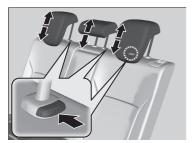
Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

■ Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Positions



A passenger sitting in the rear seat should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

To raise the head restraint:

Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint:

Push it down while pressing the release button.

○ Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Positions

When you use the head restraint in the rear seating position, pull up the head restraint to its highest position. Do not use it in any lower position.



Continued 179

■ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

To remove a head restraint:

Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then, push the release button and pull the restraint up and out.

To reinstall a head restraint:

Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

■ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

AWARNING

Failure to reinstall or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

Armrest

■ Using the Front Seat Armrest



The console lid can be used as an armrest.

■ Using the Rear Seat Armrest

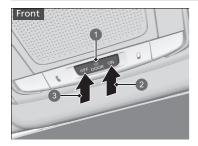


Pull down the armrest in the centre seat-back.

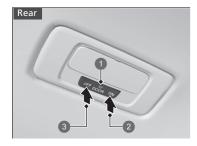
Interior Convenience Items

Interior Lights

Interior Light Switches



- Door Activated Position
- 2 On
- Off



- Door Activated Position
- 2 On
- Off

ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

■ Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any doors are opened.
- When the driver's door is unlocked.
- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

■ OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

≥ Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and turn off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.

The lights turn off after about 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.
- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF but do not open a door.

You can change the interior lights dimming time.

► How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 274

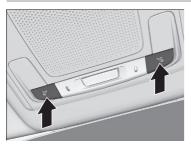
The interior lights turn off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.

To avoid draining the 12-volt battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the power system is off.

If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF mode, the interior lights turn off after about 15 minutes.

■ Map Light Switches



The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the buttons.

■ Luggage Area Lights



The luggage area lights come on when you open the tailgate.

Map Light Switches

When the front interior light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the map light will not turn off when you press the buttons.

Storage Items

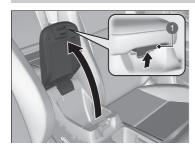
■ Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

- 1 Pull
- 2 Handle

■ Console Box



Pull the knob to open the console box.

Solove Box

AWARNING

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

Market Market
Market

Beverage Holders



■ Front seat beverage holders Located in the console between the front seats.



■ Front door side beverage holders Located on the both of front door side pockets.



■ Rear door side beverage holders Located on the both of rear doors.

≫ Beverage Holders

NOTICE

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.

Continued



■ Rear seat beverage holders

Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.

■ Coat Hooks



There are coat hooks on the rear left and right grab handles.

The coat hooks are not designed for large or heavy items.

■ Tie-down Anchorages



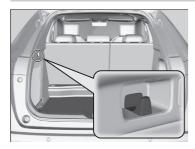
The tie-down anchorages on the luggage area floor can be used to install a net for securing items.

∑Tie-down Anchorages

Do not let anyone access items in the luggage area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

- Anchorages
- 2 Anchorages

■ Luggage Hook



The luggage hook in the luggage area can be used to hang a light items.

■Luggage Hook

NOTICE

Do not hang a large object or an object that weighs more than 3 kg on the side luggage hook. Hanging heavy or large objects may damage the hook.

■ Luggage Storage Area



By pushing the rear seat forward and putting the floor lid in the raise position, you can store bulkier items in the luggage area.

- **1.** Folding down the rear seat.
 - Folding Down the Rear Seats P. 175
- **2.** Pull the strap to open the luggage floor lid.



3. Pull the floor lid towards you.



4. Put the floor lid in the raise position.

Under-floor Storage Area



- Hook
- 2 Strap
- 3 Luggage Floor Lid
- 4 Luggage Floor Box

- **1.** Pull the strap and open the luggage floor lid.
- **2.** Take out the hook, and hang it onto the tailgate opening.

Under-floor Storage Area

AWARNING

Do not pull out or push in parcels while driving.

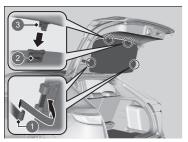
This may cause unforeseeable accident or injury at sudden braking.

Do not drive with the lid upright.

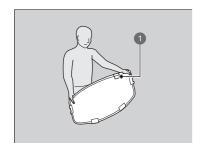
This may cause unforeseeable accident or injury at sudden braking.

■ Luggage Area Cover

The luggage area cover can be removed to give you more luggage room.



- Hooks
- 2 Tab
- Guide



1 Tag

■ To remove the luggage area cover

- 1. Open the tailgate.
- **2.** Remove the luggage area cover from hooks on both sides.
- **3.** Remove the cover from the guide while keeping the tab depressed.

Reverse this procedure to install the luggage area cover.

After reinstalling the luggage area cover, make sure it is latched securely.

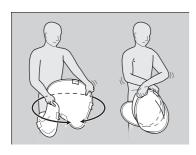
■ To store the luggage area cover

1. Hold the corner near the tag on the cover.

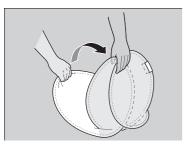
■Luggage Area Cover

Do not place items on the luggage area cover, or stack objects higher than the top of the back seat. They could block your view and be thrown around the vehicle during a crush or sudden stop.

When removing the luggage area cover, hold it firmly with your hands as it may open vigorously. Carefully check the surrounds and slowly open the cover while holding it firmly with both hands.



2. Hold both corners of the luggage area cover with your arms crossed one on the other and fold the cover.



3. Bring both circular halves together in perfect alignment.



4. Store the luggage area cover in the back pocket of the front seat while keeping it firmly pushed by hand.

Other Interior Convenience Items

Accessory Power Socket

The accessory power socket can be used when the power mode is in ACCESSORY or ON.



■ Console panel

Open the cover to use it.

■ Accessory Power Socket

NOTICE

Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the accessory power socket

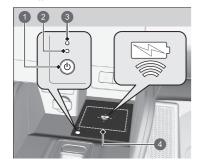
The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.

To prevent 12-volt battery drain, only use the accessory power socket with the power system on.

When the accessory power socket is not in use, close the cover to prevent any small foreign objects from getting into the accessory power socket.

Wireless Charger

To use the wireless charger, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON. Charge any devices compatible with Qi wireless charging on the area indicated by the mark as follows:



- **1** ்டு (Power) Button
- 2 Green Indicator
- 3 Amber Indicator
- 4 Charging Area

- 1. To turn the system on and off, press and hold the (b) (power) button.
 - ► When the system is activated, the green indicator light comes on.
- **2.** Place the device you want to charge on the charging area.
 - ➤ The system will automatically start charging the device, and the amber indicator light will come on.
 - ▶ Make sure that the device is compatible with the system, and placed with the chargeable side in the centre of the charging area.
- **3.** When charging is completed, the green indicator light will come on.
 - ➤ Depending on the device, the amber indicator light will stay on.

Wireless Charger

■ Marger

Windows

Windo

ACAUTION

Metal objects between the charge pad and the device to be charged will get hot and can burn you.

- Always remove foreign objects from the charge pad before charging the device.
- Be sure the surface is clear of dust and other debris before charging.
- Do not spill liquids (i. e. water, drinks, etc.) on the charger and the device.
- Do not use oil, grease, alcohol, benzine, or thinner for cleaning the charge pad.
- Do not cover the system with towels, clothing, or other objects while charging etc.
- Avoid spraying aerosols which may come in contact with the charge pad surface.

This system consumes a lot of power. Do not use the system for a long time when the power system is off. This may weaken the 12-volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

When using the wireless charger, check the user's manual that came with the compatible device you want to charge.

appears on the audio/information screen when the device is being charged by the wireless charger.

■ When charging does not start

Perform one of the solutions in the following table.

Indicator		Cause	Solution
Green & Amber	Blinking simulta- neously	There is an obstacle(s) between the charging area and the device.	Remove the obstacle(s).
		The device is not within the charging area.	Pick up and reset the device to the centre of the charging area where 👺 is located.
		The temperature of the wireless charger pad increases.	Temporarily suspend charging the device. Wait for the temperature to drop and attempt to charge the device again.
Amber	Blinking	The wireless charger is faulty.	Contact a dealer for repairs.

The wireless charger can support up to 15W, but the charging rate varies based on the device and other conditions.

NOTICE

Do not place any magnetic recording media or precision machines within the charge area while charging.

The data on your cards such as credit cards can be lost because of the magnetic effect. Also, precision machines such as watches can be affected.

"Qi" and @ marks are the registered trademarks owned by Wireless Power Consortium (WPC).

In the following cases, charging may stop or not start:

- The device is already fully charged.
- The temperature of the device is extremely high while charging.
- You are at a place that emits strong electromagnetic waves or noises, such as TV station, electric power plant, or petrol station.
- The device has a cover, case, or accessories which are not compatible with wireless charging.

A device may not charge if the size or shape of its chargeable side is not appropriate for use with the charging area.

Not all devices are compatible with the system.

During the charging phase, it is normal for the charging area and device to heat up.

Wireless Charger

Charging may be briefly interrupted when:

- All doors or the tailgate are closed
- to avoid interference with the proper functioning
- of the keyless access system.

 The position of the device is altered.

Do not charge more than one device at a time on a charging area.



Burn risk:

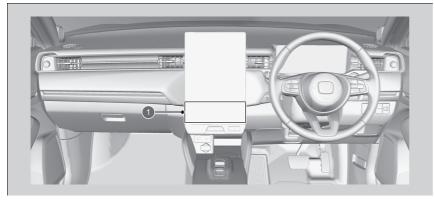
Any metal objects placed between pad and device may become hot.

If the device becomes too hot and its battery protection function activates, it may charge extremely slowly or no longer charge. The temperature at which the battery protection function activates depends on the device.

Climate Control System

Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.



Climate Control Screen

If any icons/buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the icons/buttons that was pressed will take priority.

The auto indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the icon/button that were pressed will be controlled automatically.

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** icon is selected.

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh air mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

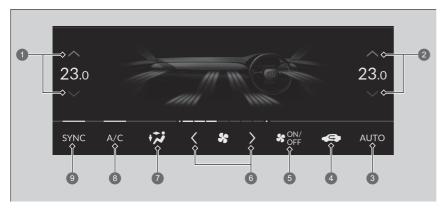
When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, ${\bf Lo}$ or ${\bf Hi}$ is displayed.

Selecting the $\lceil 80\% \rceil$ icon switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

197

Use the system when the power system is on.

- **1.** Select the **AUTO** icon.
- **2.** Adjust the interior temperature using the driver's side or passenger's side temperature control icons.
- **3.** Select the (ON/OFF) icon to cancel.



- Passenger's Side Temperature
 Control Icons
- 2 Driver's Side Temperature Control Icons
- **3 AUTO** Icon
- 4 (Recirculation) Icon
- S SON/ (ON/OFF) Icon
- 6 Fan Control Icons

- Mode Icon
 - Air flows from dashboard vents
 - Air flows from floor and dashboard vents
 - Air flows from floor vents
 - Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents.
- 8 A/C Icon
- SYNC Icon

■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

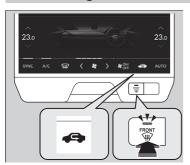
Select the (recirculation) icon and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

The High Voltage battery level being low may reduce the climate control system performance.

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows



Pressing the $\widehat{\mathbb{F}}$ (windscreen demister) button turns the air conditioning system on.

Select the icon (indicator off) to switch the fresh air mode.

Press the button again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

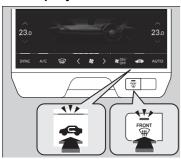
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.

When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

■ To rapidly defrost the windows



- **1.** Press the button (indicator on).
- **2.** Select the icon (indicator on).

∑To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

Continued 199

Synchronization Mode

You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver's side and the passenger's side in synchronization mode.

- 1. Select the **SYNC** icon.
 - ▶ The system switches to synchronization mode.
- **2.** Adjust the temperature using the driver's side temperature control icons.

Select the **SYNC** icon or adjust the interior temperature using the passenger's side temperature control icons to return to dual mode.



- Passenger's Side Temperature Control Icons
- 2 Driver's Side Temperature Control Icons
- **3 SYNC** Icon

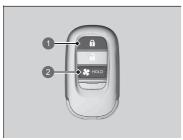
Synchronization Mode

When the system is in dual mode, the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can be set separately.

When you press the $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}$ button, the system changes to synchronization mode.

Remote Climate Pre-Conditioning

You can operate the climate control system from outside the vehicle.



- 1 Lock Button
- Climate Button

■ To turn on the system

- **1.** Press the lock button.
 - Some exterior lights flash.
- 2. Within about five seconds, press and hold the climate button.
 - Some exterior lights flash.
 - After a few seconds, some exterior lights flash six times and the climate control system is turned on.

■ To turn off the system

Press and hold the climate button.

► Some exterior lights flash and the climate control system is turned off.

■ Remote Climate Pre-Conditioning

AWARNING

Make sure that no one is inside the vehicle when you use the remote climate control system. After a certain period of time has elapsed, the system shuts off temporarily. During this time, the interior of the vehicle may heat up or cool down depending on ambient temperatures. If a child is left inside the vehicle, extreme temperature exposure can result in death or serious injury of the child.

The climate control system does not operate when any of the following conditions are met.

- A door or the bonnet is not closed
- The power mode is set to ON.
- The High Voltage battery level is low.

The climate control system automatically turned off when any of the following conditions are met.

- The system has been operated for more than time vour set.
- The High Voltage battery level becomes low.
- A bonnet is opened.
- The power mode is set to ON.

■ Remote Climate Pre-Conditioning

The following functions also operate according to the temperature:

When it is warm outside:

• The air conditioning is activated in recirculation mode.

When it is cold outside:

- The front defroster is activated as necessary when automatic defrosting is selected.
- The rear demister is activated.

Depending on the charging environment, the charge amount of High Voltage battery may be reduce even if the charging connector is plugged in.

You can adjust the pre-conditioning temperature, change the operation time, and turn off the automatic defroster by using the audio/information screen.

≥ EV Menu* P. 256

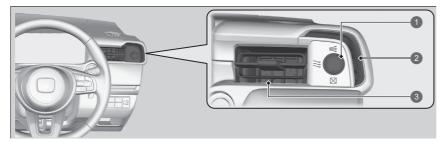
You can customize the settings of the climate control system schedule.

■ EV Menu* P. 256

■ Selecting the Desired Air Outlet

You can select the desired air outlet by turning the dial to the respective position.

- selects outlet 2.
- selects outlet 3.
- selects blockage of both 2 and 3.

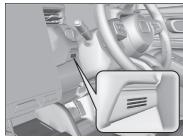


- 1 Dial
- 2 Air Outlet
- Air Outlet

Automatic Climate Control Sensors



The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.



Features This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

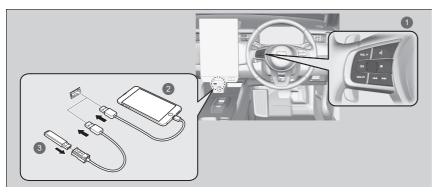
Audio System	206			
Display Audio	207			
Audio Error Messages	300			
General Information on the Audio				
System	301			

Audio System

About Your Audio System

The audio system features FM radio. It can also play USB flash drives, iPod, iPhone, and *Bluetooth*® devices.

You can operate the audio system from the remote controls on the steering wheel, or the icons on the touchscreen interface.

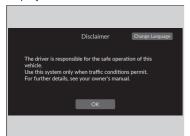


- Remote Controls
- 2 Device
- **3** USB Flash Drive

Display Audio

Start Up

The Display Audio starts automatically when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. At start-up, the following screen about the disclaimer will be displayed.



Select **OK**.

► If there is no registered device, select **OK** and the *Bluetooth*® pairing screen will be displayed.

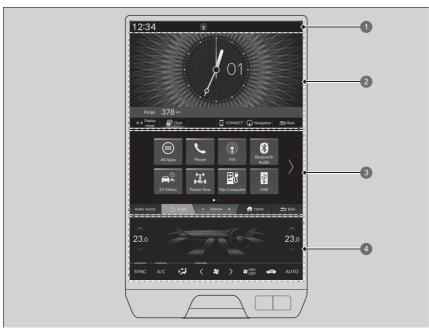


- To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)
- **1.** Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
- 2. Select Honda HFT from your phone.
 - ▶ If you want to pair a phone from this Display Audio, select Search for Devices, and then select your phone when it appears on the list.
 - ► If you check the box with Do not show this again, this screen will not be displayed.

Basic Operation

■ Audio System Function

To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



- 1 Header Area
- 2 Upper Screen
- Middle Screen
- 4 Climate Control Screen

Header Area: Displays this audio system's status.

Upper Screen

Dupper Screen P. 214

Middle Screen

Middle Screen P. 216

Climate Control Screen: Displays the vehicle's climate control system.

☑ Climate Control System P. 196

USB Ports



■ On the front panel ()

The USB port (2.5A) is for charging devices, playing audio files, and connecting compatible phones with Apple CarPlay or Android Auto*.

To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay. For Android Auto*, the USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.

■ On the front panel ()



The USB port (3.0A) is only for charging devices

You cannot play music even if you have connected music players to it.

>> USB Ports

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend that you use a USB cable if you are attaching a USB flash drive to the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version

USB charge

The USB port can supply up to 2.5A/3.0A of power. It does not output 2.5A/3.0A unless requested by the device

For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise to the radio station you are listening to.

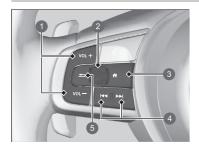


■ On the back of the console compartment

The USB ports (3.0A) are only for charging devices.

➤ You cannot play music even if you have connected music players to them.

Audio Remote Controls



Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface.

- **1 VOL** +/**VOL** − (Volume) Buttons
- 2 Left Selector Wheel
- (Home) Button
- 4 ✓ / ►► (Seek/Skip) Buttons
- (Back) Button

VOL +/**VOL** − (Volume) Buttons

Press VOL +: To increase the volume.

Press VOL —: To decrease the volume.

Left Selector Wheel

• When selecting the audio mode

Press the (home) button, then roll up or down to select (audio) on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Press the (back) button for the driver information interface to go back to the previous screen or cancel a command.

Press the 1 (home) button to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.

Continued 211

Roll up or down:

To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:

FM/iPod/USB/Bluetooth® Audio/Apps (Apple CarPlay/Android Auto*)

▶ Depending on a connected device, the displayed modes may be changed.

|◀◀/▶▶| (Seek/Skip) Buttons

• When listening to the radio

Press To select the next preset radio station.

Press To select the previous preset radio station.

Press and hold To select the next strong station.

Press and hold To select the previous strong station.

- When listening to a wired connection, USB flash drive, Bluetooth® Audio, or Smartphone Connection
 - Depending on a connected device, operations may be changed.

Press To skip to the next song.

Press To go back to the previous song.

• When listening to a USB flash drive

Press and hold To skip to the next folder.

Press and hold To go back to the previous folder.

• When listening to a wired connection:

Press and hold To skip to the next song.

Press and hold To go back to the previous song.

On-Board Owner's Manual*

You can view the content of the owner's manual on the Display Audio.

The on-board owner's manual may be terminated without warning. If service is terminated, please continue to use the owner's manual via Honda's homepage. For vehicles with the manual already installed, it can continue to be used as long as you do not perform a factory reset.

Open the Owner's Manual

- 1. Select All Apps.
- 2. Select Owner's Manual.

■ Install/Update the Owner's Manual

When you can install or update the owner's manual, the notification will be sent automatically.

To update:

- **1.** Tap the notification.
 - ► The version screen will display.
- **2.** Select items to be updated.
- 3. Tap Update.

If you unselect an item on the version screen, you will not receive any notifications for it.

On-Board Owner's Manual*

This function does not cover all languages available for the Display Audio.

Changing the language of the Display Audio will also change the language of the owner's manual. If the owner's manual is not available or installed in that language, the owner's manual will default to English.

Install/Update the Owner's Manual

There may be differences in the displayed content depending on the version of the owner's manual.

If the owner's manual is not installed yet, you can install it via Wi-Fi.

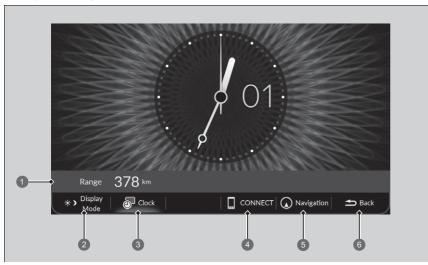
Connect the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Hotspot P. 245

* Not available on all models

Audio/Information Screen

Upper Screen

Displays the navigation, smartphone connection, and clock screen.



- Range
- Display Mode
- Clock
- CONNECT
- 6 Navigation
- 6 Back

>> Audio/Information Screen

Touchscreen operation

- Use simple gestures including touching, swiping and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be greyed-out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can select them when the vehicle is stopped.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.

≧ Customized Features P. 265

Range: Displays the driving range.

Display Mode: Select to change the screen brightness.

Clock: Displays the clock.

CONNECT: Displays the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto*.

Navigation: Displays the navigation screen.

■ See the Navigation System Manual

Back: Select to go back to the previous upper screen.

■ Middle Screen

Displays the audio status. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.



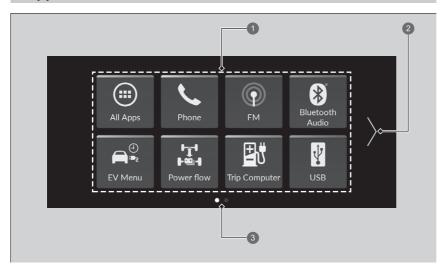
- Audio Source Icon
- Audio Icon
- Volume +/- Icons
- 4 Home Icon
- **6** Back Icon

Audio Source Icon: Select to change the audio source. **Audio** Icon: Select to turn the audio on and off.

Volume +/- Icons: Select to adjust the volume.

Home Icon: Select to go to the home screen. **Back** Icon: Select to go back to the previous middle screen.

■ App Shortcut Function



- App Shortcut Icons
- 2 Arrow
- 3 Page Indicator

■ To move to the next screen

Selecting < or >, or swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.

■ App Shortcut Function

The home screen can be added up to 6 pages.

Select **Home** to go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.

■ To add app icons on the home screen

App icons can be added on the home screen.



- 1. Select Home.
- 2. Select All Apps.
- **3.** Select the box checked on the desired apps.

∑To add app icons on the home screen

Pre-installed apps may not start up normally. If this occurs, you need to reset the system.

Defaulting All the Settings P. 281

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it may reset all the settings to their factory default.

Defaulting All the Settings P. 281

In case those apps still do not startup normally even after **Factory Data Reset**, contact your dealer.

■ To move icons on the home screen

You can change location on the home screen.



- 1. Select Home.
- **2.** Select and hold an icon.
 - ► The screen switches to the customization screen.
- **3.** Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
- 4. Select Done.
 - ► The screen will return to the home screen.

▼To move icons on the home screen ■ To move icons on the ho

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

■ To remove icons on the home screen

You can delete the icons on the home screen.



- 1. Select Home.
- 2. Select and hold an icon.
 - ► The screen switches to the customization screen.
- **3.** Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the header area.
 - ► The icon is removed from the home screen.
- 4. Select Done.
 - ► The screen will return to the home screen.

∑To remove icons on the home screen

Apps will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

Select Tips to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

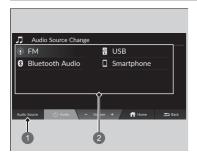
Status Area



- System Status Icon
- Status Area

- **1.** Select the system status icon.
 - ► The status area appears.
- 2. Select an item to see the details.
- **3.** Select **Back** on the upper screen or select the system status icon to close the area.

Selecting an Audio Source



Select **Audio Source** on the middle screen, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

- Audio Source Icon
- 2 Source List Icons

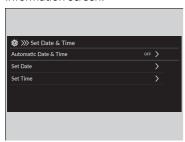
■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a greyed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Clock Setup

Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time manually and set the wallpaper of the clock in the audio/information screen.



- 1. Select Home.
- 2. Select General Settings.
- **3.** Select **System**.
- 4. Select Date & Time.
- 5. Select Set Date & Time.
- **6.** Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.

To adjust date:

- 7. Select Set Date.
- 8. Select ▲/▼.
- **9.** Select **Save** to set the date.

To adjust time:

- 7. Select Set Time.
- 8. Select ▲/▼.
- **9.** Select **Save** to set the time

■ Adjusting the Clock

The clock is automatically updated through the audio system.

You can also adjust the clock by touching the clock displayed on the header area of the audio/information screen, **Clock** displayed on the upper screen, or All Apps.

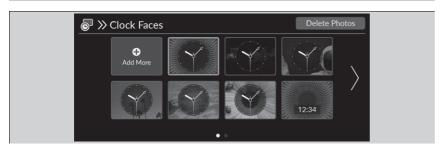
- 1. Touch the clock on the screen.

 The clock screen of the face-type appears.
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select Date & Time.
- 4. Select Set Date & Time.
- 5. Select Automatic Date & Time, then select OFF.
- 6. Select **Set Date** or **Set Time**.
- 7. Adjusting the dates, hours and minutes by selecting ▲/▼.
- 8. Select **Save** to set the time.

You can customise the clock display.

System P. 266

■ Clock Wallpaper Setup



■ Import clock wallpaper

- 1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
 - USB Ports P. 209
- **2.** Select **Clock** on the upper screen.
- 3. Select Settings.
- 4. Select Clock Faces.
- 5. Select Add More.
 - The image of the pictures stored in the USB flash drive are displayed on the list.
- **6.** Select a desired picture to import.
 - ▶ Multiple pictures can be selected at the same time.
- 7. Select OK.
 - ► The selected pictures are displayed.
- 8. Select Transfer.
 - ▶ It will return to the clock wallpaper setting screen.

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory.
 Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be less than 64 bytes.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is less than 10 MB.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the message appears.
- Up to 11 pictures can be imported.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 x 2,304 pixels. If the image size is less than 1,280 x 554 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.

■ Select clock wallpaper

- **1.** Select **Clock** on the upper screen.
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select Clock Faces.
- **4.** Select a desired picture to set.
 - ▶ The preview is displayed on the screen.
- 5. Select Save.
 - ▶ The clock screen which the wallpaper has been set is displayed.

■ Delete clock wallpaper

- **1.** Select **Clock** on the upper screen.
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select Clock Faces.
- 4. Select Delete Photos.
- **5.** Select a desired picture to delete.
 - ▶ Multiple pictures can be selected at the same time.
- 6. Select OK.
 - ► The selected pictures are displayed.
- 7. Select **Delete**.
 - ▶ It will return to the clock wallpaper setting screen.

Adjusting the Sound



- 1. Select Home.
- 2. Select an audio source icon.
- 3. Select Sound.

Select an item from the following choices:

- Bass / Treble: Treble, Midrange, Bass
- Balance / Fader: Balance, Fader
- **Speed Volume Compensation:** Sets the amount of volume increase.

■ Adjusting the Sound

The **Speed Volume Compensation** (SVC) adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

You can also adjust the sound by the following procedure.

- 1. Select **Home**.
- 2. Select General Settings.
- Select Sound.

To reset each setting for **Bass / Treble**, **Balance / Fader**, and **Speed Volume Compensation**, select **Default** on each setting screen.

Display Setup

You can set the screen brightness.

■ Changing the Screen Brightness



- 1. Select **Display Mode**.
 - ► The brightness bar is displayed for a few seconds.
 - **▶** Upper Screen P. 214
- **2.** Select or to adjust the brightness.
 - Select Display OFF to turn off Audio/ Information screen. To turn on the screen, select Home, Back, Audio, Audio Source or touch anywhere on the screen.

Display Setup

You can adjust the screen brightness by sliding or tapping on the brightness bar.

You can also change the screen brightness on the following procedures.

- 1. Select Home.
- 2. Select General Settings.
- 3. Select **Display**.
- 4. Select the setting you want.

To reset the settings, select **Default**.



System Updates

The audio system's firmware can be updated with a Wi-Fi connection, or with a USB device

The audio system's firmware can be also updated with the telematics control unit (TCU)* through the subscription-based service.

How to Update

When the audio system update is available, the notification is shown on the status area. Use the following procedure to update the system.

- 1. Select Home.
- 2. Select System Updates.

 - ► The system will check for updates.
 - ► If the update icon is appeared on the home screen, select the status icon.

 Status Area P. 221
- 3. Select **Download**.
 - A notification appears on the screen if need to user acceptance for download.
- 4. Select Install Now or Install While Vehicle Off.
 - A notification appears on the screen if the update is successful.

You can update the system via Wi-Fi, but cannot use the captive portal that require login or agreement the terms of use on the browser.

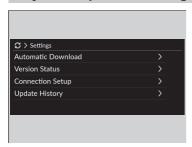
Your download will be cancelled if:

- Your Wi-Fi connection is severed.
- You turn off the power system when the 12-volt battery is low on power.

Your download will recommence the next time a Wi-Fi connection is established.

For the 12-volt battery protection, **Install While Vehicle Off** cannot be selected when the battery is low on power. If you want to install the updated data, recharge the battery or select **Install Now**.

System Updates Settings



The following settings can be set.

- Automatic Download
- Version Status
- Connection Setup
- Update History

■ Automatic download settings

Use the following procedure to change to the automatic download setting.

- 1. Select Home.
- 2. Select System Updates.
- 3. Select Settings.
- 4. Select Automatic Download.
- 5. Select the access point, then select Enable.
 - If you do not want to system update automatically, select **Disable**.

■ View a version and update status

Use the following procedure to confirm the version and update status.

- 1. Select Home.
- 2. Select System Updates.
 - ▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
- 3. Select Settings.
- 4. Select Version Status.

■ Connection setup

Use the following procedure to connect to the Internet via a Wi-Fi network.

- 1. Select Home.
- 2. Select System Updates.
 - If System Updates is not displayed on the home screen, select All Apps.
- 3. Select Settings.
- 4. Select Connection Setup.
- 5. Select OK.
- **6.** Select an access point from the network list.
 - ➤ To connect to a hotspot that is not automatically detected, select Options then Add Network.
- 7. Enter the password.
 - ▶ If you check the **Use this network to automatically download system updates** box, you can set the network to be used for system updates.
- 8. Select Connect

■ View the update history

Use the following procedure to confirm the update history.

- 1. Select Home.
- 2. Select System Updates.
 - If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select All Apps.
- 3. Select Settings.
- 4. Select Update History.

How to Update Wirelessly

■ Wireless connection mode setup

- 1. Select Home
- 2. Select System Updates.
 - ▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
- 3. Select Settings.
- 4. Select Connection Setup.
- 5. Select OK.
- **6.** Select an access point from the network list.
 - To connect to a hotspot that is not automatically detected, select Options then Add Network.
- 7. Enter the password.
 - ▶ If you check the **Use this network to automatically download system updates** box, you can set the network to be used for system updates.
- 8. Select Connect.

■ How to update

- 1. Select Home.
- 2. Select System Updates.
- 3. Select via Wireless.
- 4. Select Download.
 - A notification appears on the screen if need to user acceptance for download.
- 5. Select Install Now or Install While Vehicle Off.
 - A notification appears on the screen if the update is successful.

How to Update with a USB Device

■ Download the update files from the server

- 1. Select Home.
- 2. Select System Updates.
 - If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select All Apps.
- 3. Select Other Methods.
- 4. Select Via USB.
 - A notification appears on the screen.
- 5. Connect a USB device into the USB port.
 - ▶ The inventory data is copied into the USB device.
 - USB Ports P. 209
- **6.** Remove the USB device from the USB port.
- 7. Connect the USB device into your computer, and then download the update files.
 - ► Follow the link to download the required software update files. Refer to https://usb.honda.com for instructions.

■ Update the audio system

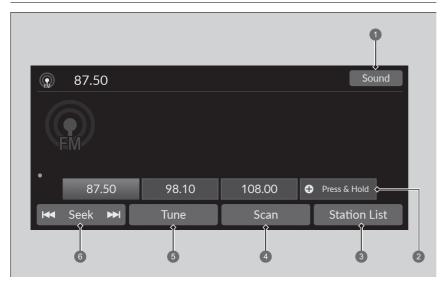
- 1. Select Home.
- 2. Select System Updates.
- 3. Select Other Methods.
- 4. Select Via USB.
 - A notification appears on the screen.
- **5.** Connect the USB device with the update files into the USB port.
 - A notification appears on the screen.
 - USB Ports P. 209
- 6. Select Install Now.
 - A notification appears on the screen if the update is successful.

A FAT32-formatted USB device between 8GB and 32GB in size with at least 8GB of free space is recommended.

Be sure to delete any previous inventory or update files from the USB before starting the USB update process.

233

Playing FM Radio



- Sound Icon
- Preset Icons
- Station List Icon

- Scan Icon
- Tune Icon
- **6** Seek Icon

Preset Memory

Tunes the radio frequency for preset memory.

To store a station:

- 1. Tune to the selected station.
- **2.** Select and hold the preset icon to store that station.
 - ► Selecting **Press & Hold** can be set a new preset station.

Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

- **1.** Select **Station List** to display a list.
- 2. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

- 1. Select **Station List** to display a list.
- 2. Select Refresh.

Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds. To begin scanning, select **Scan**, and to turn it off, select **Stop** or **Back** on the middle screen.

Seek

Selects or by to search the selected band up or down for a station with a strong signal.

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.

Switching the Audio Mode

Roll up or down to select (audio)

Roll up or down to select (audio) on the left selector wheel.

Audio Remote Controls P. 211

You can store 12 FM stations into preset memory.

Sound

Adjusts the sound settings.

Adjusting the Sound P. 226

■ Radio Frequency Manual Tune Screen

Selects to use the on-screen keyboard for entering the radio frequency directly.

- 1 On-screen Keyboard

1. Select Tune.

- **2.** Enter the desired radio frequency using the on-screen keyboard.
- **3.** Select **Enter** to tune into the frequency.

■ Radio Frequency Manual Tune Screen

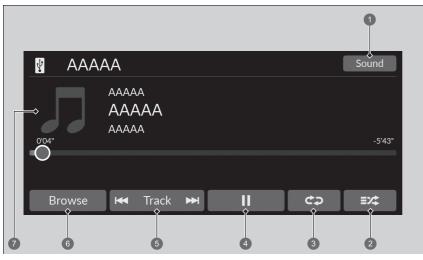


Select ◀ or ▶ to tune the radio frequency.

Music Playback via Wired Connection

Using your USB connector, connect the device to the USB port, then select the USB icon.

USB Ports P. 209



- Sound Icon
- 2 Shuffle Icon
- Repeat Icon
- 4 Play/Pause Icon

- Track Icons
- **6** Browse Icon
- Cover Art

■ How to Select a Song from the Music Search List

- 1. Select Browse.
- 2. Select a search category (e.g., Artists, Albums, etc.).
- 3. Continue making selections until you find the song of your choice.
- * Not available on all models

Music Playback via Wired Connection

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If an iPhone or a smartphone is connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto*, the USB source will be unavailable and audio files on the phone will be playable only within Apple CarPlay or Android Auto*.

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a file.

■ Shuffle/Repeat

Repeatedly select the shuffle or repeat icon until you find a play mode option of your preference.

Shuffle

Shuffle off: Shuffle mode to off.

Shuffle All Songs: Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

Repeat

Repeat off: Repeat mode to off.

102 Repeat Song: Repeats the current song.

Repeat all: Repeats all songs.

■ To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.

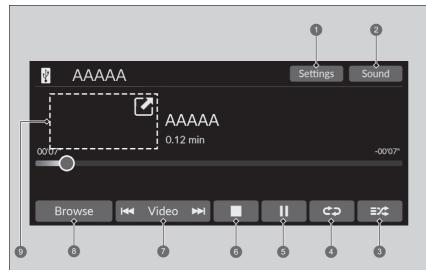
How to Change a Song

You can select or by to change songs. Select and hold to move rapidly within a song.

Media Playback via USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound and video* files on a USB flash drive. Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB icon.

USB Ports P. 209



- Settings Icon (Playing a video)*
- Sound Icon
- Random Icon
- A Repeat Icon
- S Play/Pause Icon

- **6** Stop Icon (Playing a video)*
- Track/Video* Icons
- Browse Icon
- Over Art (Playing a music)/ Mini Player (Playing a video)*

Media Playback via USB Flash Drive ■ Media Playback via USB Fla

You can use the following formats to play sound or video files on a USB flash drive.

When playing a sound file: MP3, WMA, AAC^{*1} ,

FLAC, PCM/WAVE

When playing a video file*: MP4, AVI, MKV, ASF/ WMV

^{*1:} Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

■ How to Select a File from the Music Search List

You can select to display the music search list screen.

1. Select Browse.

Hong Kong and Macau models

- 2. Select a search category (e.g., Artists, Albums, etc.).
- 3. Continue making selections until you find the song of your choice.

Except Hong Kong and Macau models

- 2. Select Current Playlist, Music, or Video.
- **3.** Continue making selections until you find the file or video of your choice.

Media Playback via USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

☑ General Information on the Audio System P. 301

WMA and AAC files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played. The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and random modes when playing a file.

■ Random/Repeat

Repeatedly select the random or repeat icon until you find a play mode option of your preference.

Random

(random off): Random mode to off.

(random all files): Plays all files in random order.

(random in folder): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Repeat

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat file): Repeats the current file.

(repeat folder): Repeats all files in the current folder.

■ When playing a video file*

(stop): Select to stop a file.

[4] / [7]: Select [6] to shrink a video screen. Select [7] to expand a video screen.

■ To pause or resume a file

Select the play/pause icon.

How to Change a File

Track/Video* Icons

You can select or by to change files. Select and hold to move rapidly within a file.

Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.

Adjusting the Sound P. 226

■ Settings*

Changes the USB settings when playing a video file.

- 1. Select Settings.
- 2. Select an option.
- Image Settings: Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen. To reset the settings, select Default. (Brightness/Contrast/Black Level/Colour/ Tint).
- Aspect Ratio: Selects the display mode with a different aspect ratio. (Original/ Normal*1/Full/Zoom)

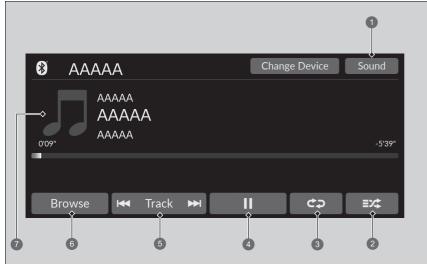
^{*1:} Default Setting

Playing Bluetooth® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

Phone Setup P. 288



- Sound Icon
- Shuffle Icon
- Repeat Icon
- 4 Play/Pause Icon

- **6** Track Icons
- **6** Browse Icon
- Cover Art

≥Playing Bluetooth® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there is more than one paired phone in the vehicle, the system automatically connects to the prioritized phone. You can assign priority to a phone in the *Bluetooth*® device list.

Phone Setup P. 288

The connected phone for *Bluetooth*® Audio can be different

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto*, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone is unavailable. However, a second previously paired phone can stream *Bluetooth*® Audio by selecting from the *Bluetooth*® device list.

Phone Setup P. 288

■ To Play *Bluetooth®* Audio Files

- 1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.
 ▶ Phone Setup P. 288
- 2. Select the Bluetooth® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

■ To play or pause a file

Select the play/pause icon.

Searching for Music

- 1. Select Browse.
- 2. Select a search category (e.g., Albums).
- 3. Select an item.
 - ► The selection begins playing.

∑To Play Bluetooth® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone manufacturer's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone by selecting **Change Device**.

Phone Setup P. 288

Searching for Music

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a file.

■ Shuffle/Repeat

Repeatedly select the shuffle or repeat icon until you find a play mode option of your preference.

Shuffle

Shuffle off: Shuffle mode to off.

Shuffle All Songs: Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

Repeat

Repeat off: Repeat mode to off.

Repeat Song: Repeats the current song.

Repeat Group: Repeats the current group.

Repeat all: Repeats all songs.

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the functions may not be displayed.

■ To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.

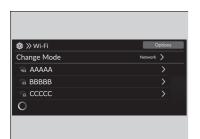
■ How to Change a File

You can select or by to change files. Select and hold to move rapidly within a file.

Wi-Fi Connection

This vehicle is equipped with Wi-Fi connectivity. You can connect to an external Wi-Fi hotspot or communication device.

Connect the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Hotspot



- 1. Select Home.
- 2. Select General Settings.
- 3. Select Connections.
- 4. Select Wi-Fi.
- **5.** Select **OK**.
- **6.** Select an access point from the network list.
 - To connect to a hotspot that is not automatically detected, select Options then Add Network.
- 7. Enter the password.
 - If you check the Use this network to automatically download system updates box, you can set the network to be used for system updates.
 - System Updates P. 228
- 8. Select Connect.

■ Turning off the Wi-Fi connection

- 1. Select Change Mode.
- 2. Select OFF.

Wi-Fi Connection ■ Wi-Fi Connection Wi-Fi Connection

Wi-Fi and Wi-Fi Direct are registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®.



∑Connect the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Hotspot

You cannot go through the setting procedure while the vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to set the audio system in Wi-Fi mode.

Some mobile phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the sicon on the system status area. Transmission speed and others will not be displayed on this screen.

Status Area P. 221

In case of Wi-Fi connection with your phone, make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via the USB port or wirelessly, and the Apple CarPlay icon is selected, you can use Apple CarPlay on the audio/information screen.

USB Ports P. 209



Apple CarPlay

■Apple CarPlay

The images shown here (designs, specifications, etc.) may differ from what is displayed on your screen.

Only iPhone 5 or newer versions with iOS 8.4 or later are compatible with Apple CarPlay.

We recommend using the latest OS.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

While connected to Apple CarPlay, calls are only made through Apple CarPlay. If you want to make a call with the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system, turn Apple CarPlay off.

When your iPhone is connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Apple CarPlay is connected.

Phone Setup P. 288

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* cannot run at the same time.

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.

Apple CarPlay Menu

The following items are only representative examples. Applications displayed on the screen can be changed on your smartphone.

Phone

Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voicemail.

Music

Play music stored on your iPhone.

Maps

Display Apple Maps and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone.

Messages

Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.

Honda

Select the Honda icon to go back to the home screen.

Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations

Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

Connecting Apple CarPlay Using the USB Cable to the USB Port

1. Connect the iPhone to the USB port using the USB cable.

USB Ports P. 209

- ► The confirmation screen will be displayed.
- 2. Select Yes.
 - ▶ If you do not want to connect Apple CarPlay, select **No**.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Connection** settings menu.

Connect Apple CarPlay Wirelessly

- Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly from the upper screen
- 1. Select CONNECT.
- 2. Select + Connect New Device.
- **3.** Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

▶ Phone Setup P. 288

- 4. Select Yes.
 - ▶ If your iPhone asks for permission to accept an Apple CarPlay connection, accept to connect.

■Apple CarPlay

You can also use the method below to set up Apple CarPlay:

Select **General Settings** →

Smartphone Connection → Apple CarPlay → Select device

Use of user and vehicle information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

■ Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly on the Apple CarPlay device list

- 1. Select Home.
- 2. Select General Settings.
- 3. Select Smartphone Connection.
- 4. Select Apple CarPlay.
- 5. Select + Connect New Device.
- **6.** Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.
 - Phone Setup P. 288
- 7. Select Yes.
 - ▶ If your iPhone asks for permission to accept an Apple CarPlay connection, accept to connect.

■ Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly on the *Bluetooth*® device list

- 1. Select Home.
- 2. Select General Settings.
- 3. Select Connections.
- 4. Select Bluetooth.
- 5. Select + Connect New Device.
- **6.** Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.
 - Phone Setup P. 288
- 7. Select Yes.
 - ▶ If your iPhone asks for permission to accept an Apple CarPlay connection, accept to connect.

■ Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly with the steering wheel

- **1.** Press and hold the 🖟 (talk) button on the steering wheel.
- 2. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.
 - Phone Setup P. 288
- 3. Select Yes.
 - ▶ If your iPhone asks for permission to accept an Apple CarPlay connection, accept to connect.

■ Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly at start-up (when there is no phone paired to the system)

- 1. Set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON.
- 2. Select OK.
 - ▶ If there is no registered device, the *Bluetooth*® pairing screen will be displayed.
 - ▶ If you check the box with **Do not show this again**, this screen will not be displayed.
- **3.** Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.
 - Phone Setup P. 288
- 4. Select Yes.
 - ▶ If your iPhone asks for permission to accept an Apple CarPlay connection, accept to connect.

■ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Press and hold the 🖟 (talk) button to activate Siri.



1 配 (Talk) Button

Press and hold to activate Siri. Press again to deactivate Siri. Press and release to activate voice tag dial.

∑Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri:

- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit www.apple.com/ios/siri.

Android Auto™*

When you connect an Android™ phone to the audio system via the USB port, and the Android Auto icon is selected, you can use Android Auto on the audio/information screen.

We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto.

USB Ports P. 209

☑ Connecting Android Auto Using the USB Cable to the USB Port P. 254



Android Auto

Android Auto™*

The images shown here (designs, specifications, etc.) may differ from what is displayed on your screen.

We recommend that you update Android OS to the latest version when using Android Auto. *Bluetooth* A2DP cannot be used while your phone is connected to Android Auto.

To use Android Auto on a smartphone with Android 9.0 (Pie) or earlier, you need to download the Android Auto app from Google Play to your smartphone.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Android Auto, connect the USB cable to the USB port.

USB Ports P. 209

When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Android Auto is connected.

Phone Setup P. 288

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot run at the same time.

Android and Android Auto are trademarks of Google LLC.

Android Auto Menu

The following items are only representative examples. Applications displayed on the screen can be changed on your smartphone.

Maps

Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.

• Phone

Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voicemail.

Honda

Select the **Honda** icon to go back to the home screen.

Android Auto™*

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto homepage.

Screens may differ depending on the version of the Android Auto app you are using.

Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations

Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto homepage for information on compatible apps.

Connecting Android Auto Using the USB Cable to the USB Port

- **1.** Connect the Android phone to the USB port using the USB cable.
 - USB Ports P. 209
 - ► The confirmation screen will be displayed.
- 2. Select Yes.
 - ▶ If you do not want to connect Android Auto, select **No**.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Connection** settings menu.

Android Auto™*

Only initialize Android Auto when you are safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.

You can use the method below to change Android Auto settings after you have completed the initial setup:

Select General Settings →
Smartphone Connection → Android Auto →
Select device

Use of user and vehicle information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by Google's Privacy Policy.

Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Press and hold the <u>£</u> (talk) button to operate Android Auto with your voice.



1 配 (Talk) Button

Press and hold to operate Android Auto with your voice. Press and release to activate voice tag dial.

■Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:

- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto homepage.

EV Menu*

The several settings for the EV mode on the **EV Menu** screen. Select **EV Menu** on the home screen.



The following items can be set.

- Non-charging schedule
- Charging limit settings
- Charging current settings
- Pre-journey climate schedule
- Pre-journey climate settings

■ Non-charging Schedule Setting

Non-charging schedule can be set. Select a desired settings.

Using a Timer* P. 449



■ Charging Limit Settings

Charging limit can be set. Select a desired settings.

► Maximum Charge Setting* P. 451

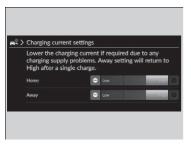


■ Charging Current Settings

Charging current can be set.

Select a desired settings.

☑ Charging Current Settings* P. 452



■ Pre-Journey Climate Schedule Setting

Pre-Journey Climate Schedule causes the climate control system to operate in advance of the selected departure time in order to make the temperature inside the vehicle closer to your set temperature.

You can set up to 7 different schedules.



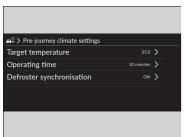
- **1.** Select **ON/OFF**, and then select settings for all items in order starting from the top.
- 2. Select Save.

Pre-Journey Climate can only operate for up to 30 minutes. A new schedule cannot be set if there is another valid schedule within those 30 minutes.

Continued 259

■ Pre-Journey Climate Settings

Pre-journey climate settings can be set. Select a desired settings.



The following items can be set.

- Target temperature: Selects temperature adjustments. (Lo ~ 18.5 ~ 25.0*1 ~ 31.5 ~ Hi)
- Operating time: Selects operating time. (10 minutes/20 minutes/30 minutes*1)
- Defroster synchronisation: The On/Off settings for operating the defroster automatically. (ON*1/OFF)

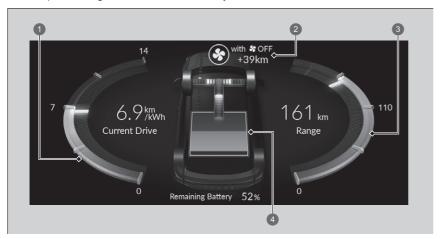
This setting is possible when the climate control system has been activated by the keyless remote.

Remote Climate Pre-Conditioning P. 201

*1: Default Setting

Power Flow

The energy flow screen shows the vehicle's power flow, average energy consumption, range, and climate control system ON/OFF indicator.



- Average Energy Consumption
- ② Climate Control System ON/OFF Indicator➡ Additional Driving Range P. 264
- 3 Driving Range by High Voltage Battery
- 4 High Voltage Battery Level Gauge

Shows the High Voltage battery power flow, indicating what is supplying power to the vehicle and/or charging the battery.

► The indicator for the power transmission appears in blue, and for the battery charging operation, in green.

When the shift position is set to D

Display	Colour of indicators	Vehicle's Condition
	Blue	While Driving: Power is being supplied by the High Voltage battery.
	Green	While Decelerating: High Voltage battery is being charged by regenerative braking.
	-	When Stopped: The vehicle is idle (standby state).

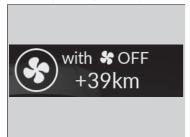
When the shift position is set to P

Display	Colour of indicators	Vehicle's Condition
Connected	Blue	Power to the climate control system is being supplied by the High Voltage battery.
Charging	Green	High Voltage battery is being charged by an AC or CCS2 DC charger.

Continued

Additional Driving Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining power. This estimate is based on the energy consumption of your previous trips and the remaining charge of the high voltage battery.



You can increase the driving range by turning off the climate control system. The distance displayed under **with (S) OFF** is the additional estimated distance that the vehicle can drive if the climate control system is turned off.

To turn the climate control system off, select the soll icon.

Climate Control System P. 196

The additional driving range displayed is only an estimate and may differ to the actual distance the vehicle can travel.

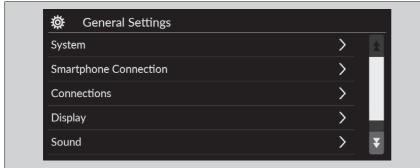
Driving range is dependent on driving conditions and climate control system use. Since the climate control system in this vehicle runs on electricity, it will consume electricity when in use. The climate control system requires more electricity for heating than it does for cooling; therefore, when you use the heating function, especially when ambient temperatures are very low, the distance that you can travel on the remaining power will be shortened. The audio/information screen shows the driving range as well as the amount of electricity that has been consumed by the motor and the climate control system.

Customized Features

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

■ How to Customize the General Settings

With the power mode in ON, select **Home**, and select **General Settings**, then select a setting item.



- **System ≥** P. 266
- Smartphone Connection **№** P. 268
- Connections
 ▶ P. 269
- **Display P**. 271
- **Sound** P. 272
- **Camera** P. 273

○ Customized Features

When you customize settings, make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop and shift to [P].

Continued 265

■ System

Custor	nizable Feat	tures	Description	Selectable Settings
		Automatic Date & Time	Selects ON to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock. Select OFF to cancel this function.	ON*1/OFF
	Set Date & Time	Set Date	Adjusts date. ▶ Adjusting the Clock P. 223	Day/Month/Year
Date & Time		Set Time	Adjusts time. ▶ Adjusting the Clock P. 223	Hour/Minute AM/PM
	Date Forr	nat	Select a date format.	MM/DD/YYYY/ DD/MM/YYYY* ¹ / YYYY/MM/DD
	Time For	mat	Select a time format.	12-H*1/24-H

^{*1:}Default Setting

Customiz	able Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Language		Changes the audio/information screen language.	Thai*2, or Chinese*2 Some languages may not be available in all regions. Check the audio/ information screen for available options.
Touch Panel Sensitivity		Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen.	High/Normal*1
	System Sounds	Sets the system sound volume level.	_
	Text-to-Speech	Sets the text-to-speech volume level.	_
System Volumes	Navigation Guidance	Sets the navigation guidance volume level.	_
	Ringtone	Sets the ringtone volume level.	_
	Default	Resets all System Volumes settings to default values.	

^{*1:}Default Setting
*2:The default setting varies depending on the model.

Custo	mizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Status				
Lega	Legal Information	_		
About	Model Number	Displays the Andraid setting items		
About	Android Version	 Displays the Android setting items. 	_	
-	Kernel Version			
	Build Number			
Factory Data Reset		Resets all the settings to their factory default. Defaulting All the Settings P. 281	Continue/Cancel	
Detail Information	App Manager	Displays the Android system memory and apps information.	-	

■ Smartphone Connection

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Apple Carplay	+ Connect New Device	Pairs a new phone to Apple CarPlay. ▶ Phone Setup P. 288	_
Apple CarPlay -	(Saved Devices)	Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. ▶ Phone Setup P. 288	_
Android Auto*	(Saved Devices)	Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. ▶ Phone Setup P. 288	_

■ Connections

	Customizable	Features	Description	Selectable Settings
	Change Mode		Changes the Wi-Fi mode.	Network*1/ Smartphone*2/OFF
	(Available N Devices)	etworks/Connected	Displays the available network(s) or current connected device(s).	-
	Ontions*3	Add Network	Adds a new network to connect Wi-Fi.	_
Wi-Fi	Options*3 Saved N	Saved Networks	Saves the connected network.	_
		Network SSID	Sets the network name.	_
		Security	Displays the network security.	_
Setup*4	Password	Sets password for require entering password when connecting Wi-Fi device to the network.	_	
	-	Wi-Fi Band	Displays the Wi-Fi band.	_

^{*1:}Default Setting

^{*2:}Appears only when Apple CarPlay is connected wirelessly.
*3:Appears only when **Change Mode** setting is **Network**.
*4:Appears only when **Change Mode** setting is **Smartphone**.

C	ustomizable	Features	Description	Selectable Settings
	Ontions	Bluetooth	Turns the <i>Bluetooth</i> ® on and off.	ON*1/OFF
	Options	Priority Device	Displays the priority device.	
Bluetooth	+ Connect	New Device	Pairs a new phone to HFT. ➡ Phone Setup P. 288	_
	(Saved Dev	ices)	Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. ▶ Phone Setup P. 288	_

^{*1:}Default Setting

■ Display

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Brightness	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	_
Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	<u>—</u>
Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	_
Default	Resets all customized settings for the brightness, contrast, and black level.	

■ Sound

Customizable F	eatures	Description	Selectable Settings
	Treble		
Bass / Treble	Midrange		
	Bass	Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound. Adjusting the Sound P. 226	_
Balance / Fader			
Speed Volume Compensation			

■ Camera

Customizabl	e Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Poor Comoro	Fixed Guideline	Shows the guideline that does not move with the steering wheel. Multi-View Rear Camera P. 436	ON*1/OFF
Rear Camera Dynamic Guideline	Shows the guideline that moves with the steering wheel. Multi-View Rear Camera P. 436	ON*1/OFF	
Cross Traffic Monitor*		Shows arrows on the rear camera image to indicate vehicles approaching from the sides. ▶ Cross Traffic Monitor* P. 432	ON*1/OFF

^{*1:}Default Setting

* Not available on all models

■ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

With the power mode in ON, select **Home**, and then select **Vehicle Settings** and select a setting item.



■ Deflation warning system

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Deflation warning system	Cancels/Calibrates the deflation warning system. ▶ Deflation Warning System P. 336	Calibrate/Cancel

■ Driver assist system setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Preceding vehicle proximity warning distance	Changes the distance at which Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) alerts. ■ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) P. 349	Far/Normal*1/Near
ACC vehicle ahead detected beep	Turns on/off audible notification when vehicle has moved in/out of adaptive cruise control range. ■ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 372	ON/OFF*1
Lead car departure notification system*	Changes the setting for the lead car departure notification system. ▶ Lead Car Departure Notification System* P. 410	Normal*1/Early/OFF
Road departure mitigation setting	Selects operating mode of the Road Departure Mitigation system. ▶ Road Departure Mitigation System P. 362	Except Hong Kong and Macau models Early/Normal*1/ Delayed/Warning only Hong Kong and Macau models Early/Normal/ Delayed*1/Warning only
Lane keep assist beep	Switches the LKAS and Traffic Jam Assist* suspend alert beeps on and off. ▶ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 389 ▶ Traffic Jam Assist* P. 400	ON/OFF*1
Blind spot information*	Selects on/off the blind spot information system audible alert. В Blind Spot Information System* P. 340	Audible and visual alert*1/Visual alert only

^{*1:}Default Setting

^{*} Not available on all models

■ Meter setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Adjust outside temp. display	Selects to adjust outside temperature reading by a few degrees. Outside Temperature P. 115	-3°C ~ ±0°C*1 ~ +3°C
Trip A reset timing	Selects the timing to reset Trip A. Energy Consumption / Trip Meter P. 118 Speed/Time/Trip Meter P. 120	When charged/Manual reset*1/ POWER OFF
Trip B reset timing	Selects the timing to reset Trip B. Energy Consumption / Trip Meter P. 118 Speed/Time/Trip Meter P. 120	When charged/Manual reset*1/ POWER OFF
Alarm volume control	Changes volume level of all system warnings, door opening warning and indicator.	Max/Mid* ¹ /Min
Reverse position alert tone	Turns on/off the reverse alert sound.	ON*1/OFF
Turn by turn display	Turns on/off the pop-up warning in the turn-by-turn navigation in the driver information interface. Turn-by-turn directions P. 122	ON*1/OFF
Rear seat reminder	Turns on/off the Rear Seat Reminder feature.	ON*1/OFF

^{*1:}Default Setting

■ Keyless access setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Keyless access beep volume*	Changes the beep volume of unlocking/locking the doors.	Max*1/Min
Keyless access light flash	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.	ON*1/OFF
Keyless access beep*	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.	ON*1/OFF

^{*1:}Default Setting

■ Lighting setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Auto High Beam	Turns on/off auto high beam function.	ON*1/OFF
Interior light dimmer duration	Selects the length of time the interior lights stay on after doors are closed. ▶ Interior Lights P. 182	60sec/30sec*1/15sec
Headlight auto OFF timer	Selects the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door. Automatic Lighting Off Feature P. 154	60sec/30sec/15sec*1/0sec
Instrument illumination sensitivity	Selects sensitivity of automatic instrument panel dimming when headlight is in AUTO setting.	Min/Low/Mid*1/High/Max
Headlight integration with wipers	Selects on/off headlight function and wiper operation when the headlight is in AUTO setting. ▶ Headlight Integration with Wipers P. 154	ON*1/OFF

^{*1:}Default Setting

■ Door/window setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Walk away lock*	Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle.	ON/OFF*1
Lock presetting*	Turns on/off the lock presetting function.	ON*1/OFF
Keyless lock notification	Turns on/off flash of exterior lights when doors are locked/unlocked by keyless remote. Dusing the Remote Transmitter P. 137	ON*1/OFF
Auto folding door mirror	Changes how you can fold the door mirrors.	ON*1/OFF
Remote Window Control	Turns on/off the remote window control.	ON*1/OFF

^{*1:}Default Setting

Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.

■ Defaulting General Settings

- 1. Select Home.
- 2. Select General Settings.
- **3.** Select **System**.
- 4. Select Factory Data Reset.
 - A confirmation message appears on the screen.
- **5.** Select **Continue** to reset the settings.
- **6.** Select **Continue** again to reset the settings.
 - ► The system will reboot.

Defaulting Vehicle Settings

- 1. Select Home.
- 2. Select Vehicle Settings.
- 3. Select **Default**.
- 4. Select Yes.

Defaulting All the Settings

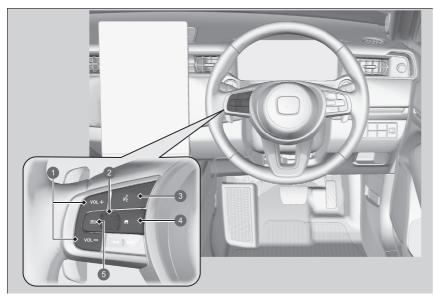
When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

Hands-Free Telephone System

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

■ HFT Buttons



- **1 VOL** + **/VOL** − (Volume) Buttons
- 2 Left Selector Wheel
- **3** 配 (Talk) Button
- 4 (Home) Button
- (Back) Button

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth** setting must be **ON**.

Customized Features P 265

Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphones.
- Press the 🖟 button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, the volume level is able to change by the audio system's volume.

If there is no Favourite Contact entry in the system, the pop-up notification appears on the screen.

Favourite Contacts P. 292

(Talk) button: Press to call a number with a stored voice tag.

(Home) button: Press to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface

Left Selector Wheel: Press the (home) button. Roll up or down to select **Phone** on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel. While receiving a call, the incoming call screen is displayed on the driver information interface. You can pick up the call using the left selector wheel.

Receiving a Call P. 298

(Back) button: Press to go back to the previous screen or cancel a command of the driver information screen.

To go to the phone screen:

- 1. Select Home.
- **2.** Select **Phone** to switch the display to the phone screen.

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

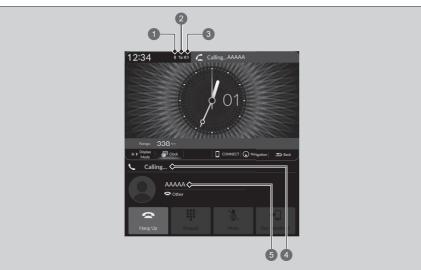
HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

Continued 283

■ HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



- Bluetooth® Indicator
 Appears when your phone is connected to HFT.
- Signal Strength
- Battery Level Status
- 4 HFT Mode
- **5** Caller's Name (If registered)/Caller's Number (If not registered)

► MFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a greyed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored Favourite contacts entries with voice tags can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

Favourite Contacts P. 292

Continued 285

■ HFT Menus

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use the system. Select **Home** and then **Phone**.



- Settings
- Recent calls
- Favourite contacts
- Contacts
- S Keypad

Settings: Change the phone settings.

Recent calls: Display the last outgoing, incoming and missed calls.

Favourite contacts: Dial the selected number in the favourite contacts list.

Contacts: Display the phonebook of the paired phone.

Keypad: Enter a phone number to dial.

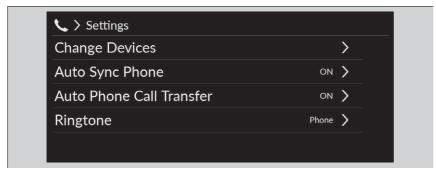
>> HFT Menus

To use HFT, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

Some functions are limited while driving.

■ Phone settings screen

To display the phone settings screen, select **Settings** on the phone screen.



Change Devices: Pair a new phone to the system and connect, disconnect, or delete a paired device.

Auto Sync Phone: Set phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT.

Auto Phone Call Transfer: Set calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFT when you enter the vehicle.

Ringtone: Select the ringtone.

■ Phone Setup

■ Bluetooth® setup

You can turn Bluetooth® function on and off.

- 1. Select Home.
- 2. Select General Settings.
- **3.** Select **Connections**.
- 4. Select Bluetooth.
- 5. Select Options.
- **6.** Select **Bluetooth**, then select **ON**.



■ To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

- 1. Select Phone.
- 2. Select Connect New Device.
- **3.** Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
- 4. Select Honda HFT from your phone.
 - ▶ If you want to pair a phone from this audio system, select Search for Devices, and then select your phone when it appears on the list.
- **5.** The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
 - ➤ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by phone.
- **6.** Select desired functions and then select **Connect**.

▶ Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive handsfree calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or more icons on the right side.

These icons indicate the following:

T: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.

The phone can be used with HFT.

E: The phone is compatible with Apple CarPlay.

If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay or Android Auto*, pairing of additional *Bluetooth*-compatible devices is unavailable.

289



■ To change the currently paired phone

- **1.** Go to the phone settings screen.
 - **▶ Phone settings screen** P. 287
- 2. Select Change Devices.
- **3.** Select a phone to connect.
 - HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
 - ➤ You can set the connected phone priority. Select the box checked on the phone you want to prioritize.
- **4.** Select **万**, **ᢏ**, or **ⓒ**.
 - and \ can be selected simultaneously. However, when \ is selected, \ and \ cannot be selected.
- **5.** Select **Apply**.

■ To delete a paired phone

- **1.** Go to the phone settings screen.
 - **▶ Phone settings screen** P. 287
- 2. Select Change Devices.
- **3.** Select a phone you want to delete.
- 4. Select **Delete**.
- **5.** A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Delete**

∑To change the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFT will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select **+ Connect New Device** from the **Bluetooth** screen.



Ringtone

You can change the ringtone setting.

- **1.** Go to the phone settings screen.
 - **▶ Phone settings screen** P. 287
- 2. Select Ringtone.
- 3. Select Vehicle or Phone.

Automatic Transferring

If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFT.

- **1.** Go to the phone settings screen.
 - **▶ Phone settings screen** P. 287
- 2. Select Auto Phone Call Transfer.
- 3. Select ON or OFF.

Vehicle: The fixed ringtone sounds from the speakers.

Phone: Depending on the make and model of the mobile phone, the ringtone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.

Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

■ When Automatic Phone Sync is set to On:

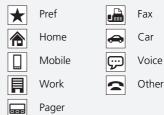
When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to the system.

■ Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting

- **1.** Go to the phone settings screen.
 - **▶** Phone settings screen P. 287
- 2. Select Auto Sync Phone.
- 3. Select ON or OFF.

Matter Market Market

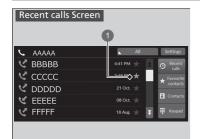
When you select a name from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see a category icon. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

■ Favourite Contacts



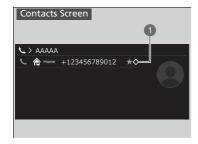
■ To add a favourite contacts

- 1. Select Phone.
- 2. Select Recent calls, Contacts, or Keypad.

On the Recent calls or Contacts screen

3. Select the star icon.

1 Star Icon



Star Icon



1 Add to Favourite Contacts

On the Keypad screen

- 3. Select Add to Favourite Contacts.
 - ➤ A notification appears on the screen if the favourite contact is successfully stored.
 - To remove the favourite contact, select the star icon again.



■ To add a voice tag to a stored Favourite contacts

- 1. Select Phone.
- 2. Select Favourite contacts.
- **3.** Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to edit.
- 4. Select Voice Tag.
- 5. Select Record.
- **6.** Select **Record**, or use the **★** button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

■ To delete a voice tag

- 1. Select Phone.
- 2. Select Favourite contacts.
- **3.** Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to edit.
- 4. Select Voice Tag.
- **5.** Select **Clear**.
- **6.** A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

➤ Favourite Contacts

Avoid using duplicate voice tags. Avoid using "home" as a voice tag. It is easier for the system to recognise a longer name. For example, use "John Smith" instead of "John."



■ To edit a favourite contacts

- 1. Select Phone.
- 2. Select Favourite contacts.
- **3.** Select **Edit** on the favourite contacts entry you want to edit.
- **4.** Select a setting you want.
- **5.** Select **Done**.

■ To delete a favourite contacts

- 1. Select Phone.
- 2. Select Favourite contacts.
- **3.** Select **Edit** on the favourite contacts entry you want to delete.
- 4. Select Remove.
- **5.** A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**

■ Making a Call



You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported **Recent calls**, **Favourite contacts**, and **Contacts** entries.

■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

- 1. Select Phone.
- 2. Select Contacts.
- 3. Select a name.
 - ➤ You can sort by First Name or Surname. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
- 4. Select a number.
 - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

Making a Call

Any voice-tagged Favourite contacts entry can be dialled by voice from most screens.

Press the © button and say the voice tag name.

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay, phone calls cannot be made with Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system and are only made from Apple CarPlay.

■ To make a call using a phone number

- 1. Select Phone.
- 2. Select Keypad.
- 3. Select a number.
 - ▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
- 4. Select Call.
 - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using the Call History

Call history is stored by All, Dialled, Missed, and Received.

- 1. Select Phone.
- 2. Select Recent calls.
 - ➤ You can sort by **All**, **Dialled**, **Missed**, or **Received**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
- 3. Select a number.
 - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using a favourite contacts entry

- 1. Select Phone.
- 2. Select Favourite contacts.
 - ▶ You can change the order of favourite contacts entries by selecting **Reorder**.
- 3. Select a number.
 - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■To make a call using the Call History

The call history displays the last 100 all, dialled, missed, or received calls.

(Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.)

∑To make a call using a favourite contacts entry

When a voice tag is stored, press the <u>(x)</u> button to call the number using the voice tag.

Favourite Contacts P. 292

Any voice-tagged Favourite contacts entry can be dialled by voice from any screen.

Press the button and follow the prompts.

■ Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming Call...** screen appears.

You can answer the call using the left selector wheel.

To pick up the call, roll up or down to select (answer) on the driver information interface and then press the left selector wheel.

▶ If you want to decline or end the call, select (ignore) on the driver information interface using the left selector wheel.

■ Receiving a Call

Call Waiting

Select (answer) to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Select using the left selector wheel to return to the current call.

Select (ignore) to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Select right jou want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the and on the driver information interface.

Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.

Mute: Mute your voice.

Use Handheld: Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

Keypad : Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven

phone system.



The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.

Select the option.

► The mute icon appears when Mute is selected when the other source screen other than the phone screen is displayed. Select Mute again to turn it off.

■Options During a Call

Keypad: Available on some phones.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.

Audio Error Messages

The following error messages are just examples. If you see an error message not listed below, follow the on-screen instructions to clear it.

iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
Connect Retry	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
Unplayable File	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are copyright protected or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about a few seconds, then plays the next file.
No Data	Appears when the iPod is empty. USB flash drive Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, PCM/WAVE, MP4*, AVI*, MKV*, or ASF/WMV* files in the USB flash drive. iPod and USB flash drive Check that compatible files are stored on the device.
Unsupported	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.
No response from device	Appears when the system does not communicate with a connected device. If it appears when a device is connected, contact your place of device purchase.
USB hub not supported	Appears when only a HUB is connected. If it appears, connect a USB flash drive to the HUB.
A charging error has occurred with the connected USB device. When safe please check the compatibility of the device and USB cable and try again.	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then, turn the audio system off and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.

^{*} Not available on all models

General Information on the Audio System

Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

■ iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Model

Made for iPod touch (5th to 6th generation) released between 2012 and 2015
Made for iPhone 4S/iPhone 5/iPhone 5s/iPhone 5c/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus/iPhone 6S/
iPhone 6S Plus/iPhone SE/iPhone 7/iPhone 7 Plus/iPhone 8/iPhone 8 Plus/iPhone X/
iPhone XS/iPhone XS Max/iPhone XR/iPhone 11/iPhone 11 Pro/iPhone 11 Pro Max/
iPhone SE (2nd generation)/iPhone 12/iPhone 12 Pro/iPhone 12 Pro Max/
iPhone 12 mini

USB Flash Drives

- Please use a recommended USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher formatted with FAT16 or FAT32.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, PCM/WAVE, AVI*, MP4*, MKV*, ASF/ WMV* formats may be unsupported.

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

The Lightning connector works with iPhone 5, iPhone 5s, iPhone 5c, iPhone 6, iPhone 6 Plus, iPhone 6S, iPhone 6S Plus, iPhone SE, iPhone 7, iPhone 7 Plus, iPhone 8, iPhone 8 Plus, iPhone X, iPhone XS, iPhone XS Max, iPhone XR, iPhone 11, iPhone 11 Pro, iPhone 11 Pro Max, iPhone SE (2nd generation), iPhone 12, iPhone 12 Pro, iPhone 12 Pro Max, iPhone 12 mini, iPod touch (5th, 6th generation).

The 30-pin connector works with iPhone 4S.

USB works with iPhone 4S, iPhone 5, iPhone 5s, iPhone 5c, iPhone 6, iPhone 6 Plus, iPhone 6S, iPhone 6S Plus, iPhone SE, iPhone 7, iPhone 7 Plus, iPhone 8, iPhone 8 Plus, iPhone X, iPhone XS, iPhone XS Max, iPhone XR, iPhone 11, iPhone 11 Pro, iPhone 11 Pro Max, iPhone SE (2nd generation), iPhone 12, iPhone 12 Pro, iPhone 12 Pro Max, iPhone 12 mini, iPod touch (5th, 6th generation).

≥USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

* Not available on all models 301

About Open Source Licences

To see the open source licence information, follow these steps.

- 1. Select Home.
- 2. Select General Settings.
- 3. Select System.
- 4. Select About.
- **5.** Select **Legal Information**.
- 6. Select Licence.

Licence Information

■ Bluetooth

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Panasonic Automotive Systems Co., Ltd. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

https://www.bluetooth.com/develop-with-bluetooth/marketing-branding/



Windows Media

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

Apple

"Made for iPod," and "Made for iPhone," mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, or iPhone, may affect wireless performance.

Apple, the Apple Logo, iPhone are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. Apple CarPlay, iPod, iPhone, iTunes, Siri and Lightning are trademarks of Apple Inc. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.



MPEG

Mpeg4 Visual

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUALA STANDARD ("MPEG-4 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.

VC-1

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE VC-1 PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE VC-1 STANDARD ("VC-1 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE VC-1 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE VC-1 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.

AVC/H.264

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD ("AVC VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.

Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto*

OWNER'S MANUAL LICENSE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE IOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.

* Not available on all models

DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO ("THE APPLICATIONS") IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE," WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS. IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO. THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORISED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME REGIONS AND JURISDICTIONS MAY DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.



This chapter discusses driving and charging.

Towing a Trailer	0
Turning on the Power	4
Precautions While Driving31 Transmission31	
Transmission 31	5
	8
	9
Shifting32	20
Deceleration Paddle Selector 32	26
Drive Mode Switch32	29
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System 33	32
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System 33	33
Agile Handling Assist33	35

Deflation Warning System Blind Spot Information System*	
Honda SENSING	
	545
Collision Mitigation Braking System	
(CMBS)	349
Road Departure Mitigation System	362
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with L	
Speed Follow	372
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)	
Traffic Jam Assist*	400
Lead Car Departure Notification System*	
Front Wide View Camera	414

. 416
. 426
. 436
. 438
. 455

* Not available on all models

Before Driving

Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
 - Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
 - Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving or fall off and impact other road users. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
 - ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
 - ▶ If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
 - ► Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.

≧ Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 487

- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
 - ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.
- Disconnect the charger cable.

NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

■ Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
 - ➤ Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.
 - Load Limit P. 313
- Do not pile items higher than the seatback height.
 - ▶ They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
 - An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
 - ▶ They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close all doors and the tailgate.
- Adjust your seating position properly.
 - Adjust the head restraint, too.
 - **Seats** P. 171
 - **Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions** P. 178
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly.
 - Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
 - Mirrors P. 168
 - Adjusting the Steering Wheel P. 167

Heat from the power system can ignite flammable materials left under the bonnet, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also, check under the bonnet for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

You can adjust the low beam headlight angle by yourself.

Headlight Adjuster P. 158

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
 - ▶ They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or the operation of the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
 - Fastening a Seat Belt P. 49
- Make sure that the indicators in the gauge come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
 - Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
 - Indicators P. 94

Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

Specifications P. 552

The load for the front and rear axles also must not exceed the maximum permissible axle weight.

Specifications P. 552

>> Load Limit

AWARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Towing a Trailer

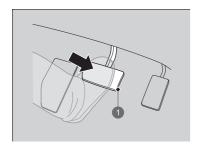
Your vehicle is not designed to, and cannot safely, tow a trailer nor have a tow hitch installed. Do not install a tow hitch on, or tow with, your vehicle.

When Driving

Turning on the Power



1 Electric Parking Brake Switch



Brake Pedal

- **1.** Make sure the parking brake is applied.
 - ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on for 30 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.

2. Depress the brake pedal.

■Turning on the Power

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when turning the power system on.

When turning on the power system in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear demister in order to reduce the 12-volt battery drain.

If the temperature of the High Voltage battery drops to -30°C or below, the power system will not start. Wait for the High Voltage battery to warm up or move the vehicle to a warmer location. Note using the battery heating system will not help in this case.

Bring the keyless remote close to the **POWER** button if the battery in the keyless remote is weak.

■ If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak
P. 525

The power system may not activate if the keyless remote is subjected to strong radio waves.



3. Without depressing the accelerator pedal, press the **POWER** button while depressing the brake pedal.



1 (Ready) Indicator

- **4.** Check the (Ready) indicator.
 - ► Keep depressing the brake pedal until the indicator comes on.
 - ► The indicator comes on when the power system is on and you can start driving.
 - If the outside temperature is extremely low, you cannot drive until conditions are improved. In this case, the indicator does not come on and a warning message appears on the driver information interface.

∑Turning on the Power

If you press the **POWER** button while depressing the brake pedal with the indicator on, the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF and you cannot start driving.

Ready Indicator P. 99

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft.

If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the power system does not activate.

Immobilizer System P. 145

When you set the power mode to ON, you may feel the brake pedal slightly sink down. This is normal.

Starting to Drive

- **1.** Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, check that the indicator is on, then put the transmission into **D**. Select **R** when reversing.
- 2. With the parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.
 - ▶ Make sure the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.
 - Parking Brake P. 416
 - If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message P. 537

■ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Put the transmission into $\boxed{\textbf{D}}$ when facing uphill, or $\boxed{\textbf{R}}$ when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Stopping the Power System

You can turn the power system off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

- **1.** Depress the brake pedal and change the shift position to **P**.
 - ▶ Do not release the brake pedal until you have confirmed that P is shown on the shift position indicator.
- 2. Press the POWER button.

Starting to Drive

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal.

When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Precautions While Driving

In a Fog

Visibility becomes low when it is foggy. When you drive, turn on the low beam headlights even during the daytime. Slow down, using the road line in the centre, guard rails, and the taillights of the vehicle ahead of you as your driving guide.

In a Strong Wind

If a strong side wind drifts your vehicle while driving, hold the steering wheel tight. Slowly decelerate your vehicle and keep your vehicle in the middle of the road. Be careful with wind gusts especially when your vehicle is exiting a tunnel, driving on a bridge or river bank, and driving through an open area like a quarry, and when a large lorry is passing by.

▶ Precautions While Driving

CAUTION: Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the power system and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

NOTICE

Do not select a shift button while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored.

Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

In Rain

The road is slippery when raining. Avoid hard braking, rapid acceleration, and abrupt steering and be more cautious when driving. It is likely to experience hydroplaning phenomenon if you are driving on a rutted road with puddles. Do not drive in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the power system or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

Transmission

Creeping

As with a conventional petrol-powered vehicle with an automatic transmission, this vehicle will creep.

Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped or ensure that brake-hold is engaged.

▶ Precautions While Driving

If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the power system will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not select $\overline{\mathbf{N}}$ while driving as you will lose regenerative braking (and acceleration) performance.

Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km after purchasing your new vehicle or replacing the brake pads or rotors, to allow for proper break-in.

Be careful when hydroplaning phenomenon occurs. When you drive on a road covered with water at excessive speed, a layer of water builds between the tyres and the road surface. If this occurs, the vehicle cannot respond to control inputs such as steering, and braking.

Slowly decelerate when you increase the deceleration rate with the deceleration paddle selector. If the road is slippery, sudden regenerative braking can cause the tyres to skid.

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift button positions



P Park

Used when parking or before turning the power on or off

R Reverse
Used when reversing

N Neutral

Transmission is not locked

D Drive

Used for: Normal driving

When in a mode other than SPORT mode

• The deceleration paddle selector can be used temporarily.

When SPORT mode is on

• The deceleration paddle selector can be used.

Shifting

AWARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that P is shown on the shift position indicator.

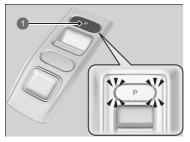
While the High Voltage battery level is full, or the High Voltage battery temperature is low, regenerative braking may become less effective.

To prevent malfunction and unintended engagement:

- Do not spill any liquids on or around shift buttons.
- Do not place or drop any objects on or around shift buttons.
- Do not let passengers or children operate the shift buttons.

The beeper sounds and message appears on the driver information interface when you depress the accelerator pedal with the shift position in $\boxed{\bf N}$. Change the shift position to $\boxed{\bf D}$ or $\boxed{\bf R}$ with the brake pedal depressed.

■ P (parking) button



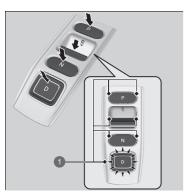
The shift position changes to $\boxed{\textbf{P}}$ when you press the $\boxed{\textbf{P}}$ button while the vehicle is parked with the power mode in ON. The indicators on the sides of the $\boxed{\textbf{P}}$ button come on.

1 P Button

■ Shift Operation



- Shift Position Indicator
- 2 Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator
- (Ready) Indicator



P: Press the P button.

R: Press back the **R** button.

N: Press the N button.

D: Press the **D** button.

Shift Button Indicator

Shift Operation

NOTICE

When you change D to R and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed. Operating the shift button before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that $\[\mathbb{P} \]$ is shown on the shift position indicator.

Use the shift position indicator and the shift button indicator to check the shift position before and after selecting a shift button.

If the indicator of the currently selected shift position, or all the shift position indicators are blinking simultaneously, there is a problem with the transmission

Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (-30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

The beeper sounds once when you change to \mathbb{R} .

► How to Customize the Vehicle Settings
P. 274

■ When opening the driver's door

If you open the driver's door under the following conditions, the shift position automatically changes to \boxed{P} .

- The vehicle is stationary with the power mode in ON, or moving at 2 km/h or slower.
- The transmission is in other than **P**.
- You have unfastened the driver side seat belt.
 - ▶ If you manually change the shift position from P with the brake pedal depressed, the shift position will automatically return to P once you release the brake pedal.

■ When turning off the power mode

If you turn the power system off while the vehicle is stationary, and the transmission is in other than [P], the shift position automatically changes to [P].

While the system is designed to automatically change the shift position to P under the described conditions, this is only an assistive feature and does not work in all situations. When you leave the driver's seat, change the shift position to P and make sure that P is displayed on the gauge.

When Stopped P. 426

If you want to drive the vehicle after the shift position has automatically changed to P under the described conditions, close the door, fasten the seat belt, depress the brake pedal, then change the shift position.

If you leave the vehicle, turn off the power system and lock the doors.

■ If you want to keep the transmission in N position (car wash mode) With the power system on:

- 1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
- 2. Select N.
- **3.** Within five seconds, press the **POWER** button.

The power mode changes to ACCESSORY and a message will be displayed on the driver information interface.

- ➤ This puts the vehicle in car wash mode which must be used when your vehicle is pulled through a conveyor type automatic car wash where you or an attendant do not remain in the vehicle.
- ▶ The shift position remains in N with the power mode in ACCESSORY for 15 minutes, then, it automatically changes to P.

Manually changing to P cancels ACCESSORY mode. The P indicator comes on and the power mode changes to OFF.

Mif you want to keep the transmission in

Mi

I position (car wash mode)

I position (car wash mode)

Missing the position in

Ni

I position (car wash mode)

I p

Note that the transmission may not stay in $\boxed{\mathbf{N}}$ position while any of the following indicators is on:

- Power system indicator
- Transmission system indicator
- 12-volt battery charging system indicator

■ Restrictions on selecting a shift position

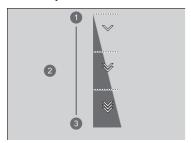
You cannot select a shift position under certain circumstances that may lead to a crash.

When the transmission is in:	1. Under these circumstances:	2. If you try to change to the following:	3. The shift position remains in/changes to:	How to change the shift position
P	The brake pedal is not depressed.		P	Release the accelerator pedal and depress the brake pedal.
	The accelerator pedal is depressed.			
N	The vehicle is moving at low speed without the brake pedal depressed.	Other shift position	N	
	The vehicle is moving at low speed with the accelerator pedal depressed.			
N or D	The vehicle is moving forward.	R		
R or N	The vehicle is moving backward.	D		Park your vehicle in a safe place.
R, N, or D	The vehicle is moving.	P		
P or N	The 🚅 indicator is not on.	A shift position other than P or N	P or N	Make sure that the indicator comes on.

Deceleration Paddle Selector

When you release the accelerator pedal, you can control the rate of deceleration without removing your hands from the steering wheel. Using the deceleration paddle selector situated on the steering wheel, you can sequentially shift through three stages of deceleration.

When descending a hill, you can use the deceleration paddle selector to help maintain the rate of deceleration, thereby allowing you to keep a safe distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.



The default deceleration stage is . Each paddle selector operation makes a single stage deceleration change.

The deceleration stage may not change if you keep the paddle selector pulled back.

- Decrease
- 2 Deceleration Stage
- Increase

To select the different stages of deceleration:

- Pull back the + selector (right side) to decrease the deceleration stage.
- Pull back the selector (left side) to increase the deceleration stage. Pull the + selector for a few seconds when you want to cancel the dece

Pull the $\boxed{+}$ selector for a few seconds when you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector.

Deceleration Paddle Selector

ACAUTION

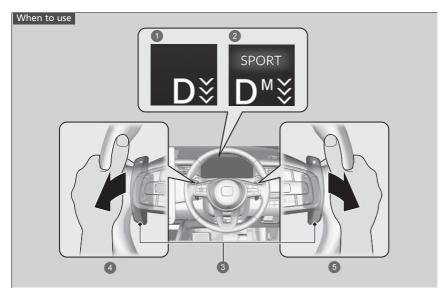
Rapidly increasing the deceleration rate by quickly shifting the deceleration paddle selector can cause the tyres to skid, resulting in a crash that could injure or kill someone.

Always maintain a reasonable rate of deceleration.

If you pull back the right and left paddle selector at the same time, the deceleration stage may not change.

In the following situations, the stage may not change and the stage icon will blink even if you pull back the selector. The deceleration stage may decrease or cancel automatically:

- The high voltage battery is fully charged or its temperature is too cold or too hot.
- The speed of the vehicle is beyond the deceleration range with **SPORT** mode off.
- Power system protection is needed.
- The paddle selector is operated while your vehicle is stopped automatically by Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow.



Shift position is in **D**

- **1)** When in a mode other than **SPORT** mode, the deceleration stage appears.
- 2) When **SPORT** mode is ON, The deceleration stage and **M** appear.
- 3 Paddle Selector
- ♠ Increase the deceleration stage when pulling the paddle selector (left side)
- **5** Decrease the deceleration stage when pulling the + paddle selector (right side)

Deceleration Paddle Selector

If either paddle selector is operated, ACC with Low Speed Follow will cancel automatically.

■ When in a mode other than SPORT mode

If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change temporarily, and the stage will appear in the gauge.

When you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector, pull the $\boxed{+}$ selector (right side) for a few seconds.

The deceleration paddle selector will cancel automatically and the deceleration stage in the gauge will disappear when you drive with constant speed or accelerate, or just before your vehicle stops.

■ When SPORT mode is ON

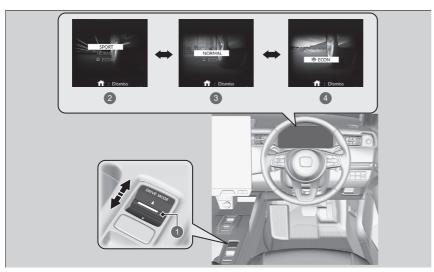
If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change and the stage along with **M** will appear in the gauge. The deceleration stage will not cancel automatically while **SPORT** mode is ON.

When you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector, turn the **SPORT** mode OFF, or pull the + selector (right side) for a few seconds. When cancelled, deceleration stage in the gauge disappears.

Drive Mode Switch

Press the **DRIVE MODE** switch to select the appropriate mode. The mode you select appears on the driver information interface.

■ Selecting the Drive Mode



- **11 DRIVE MODE** Switch
- SPORT Mode

- NORMAL Mode
- **4** ECON Mode

□ Drive Mode Switch □ Drive Mode Switch

The mode may not be able to be changed under some driving conditions.

If there is a vehicle system failure, a message will also appear on the driver information interface, and you cannot change the mode.

■ SPORT Mode



Enhances responsiveness to the driver's input.

NORMAL Mode



Optimises the balance between operability and comfort.

ECON Mode



Facilitates fuel-efficient driving.

■ Next Start-Up Mode

The mode for the next start-up is saved according to the following chart.

Last Mode	Next Mode	
SPORT or NORMAL	NORMAL	
ECON	ECON	

≫ECON Mode

While in **ECON** mode, the climate control system will be less effective and the vehicle will be slower to accelerate.

Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System

Alerts pedestrians when a vehicle is propelled solely by electricity, approaching at speeds around 32 km/h or less.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

VSA helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating motor output and selectively applying the brakes.

VSA Operation



motor does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic brake system. You will also see the indicator blink.

When VSA activates, you may notice that the

VSA System Indicator

The VSA may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

The main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), safety support, Road Departure Mitigation, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ VSA On and Off



1 VSA OFF Indicator 2 2 (VSA OFF) Button This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA functionality/features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA functionality/features, press the (VSA **OFF**) button until you hear a beep.

VSA is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off.

When the putton is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from under the bonnet while system checks are being performed immediately after turn the power system on or while driving. This is normal.

Agile Handling Assist

Lightly brakes each of the front and rear wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

■ Agile Handling Assist

The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from under the bonnet while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.

Deflation Warning System

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the deflation warning system on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated.



 Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator This will cause the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on and a message to appear on the gauge.

Deflation Warning System ■

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on.

Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:

- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become overinflated in warmer weather.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator will not come on as a result of overinflation.

The deflation warning system may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed.

Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.

Example 2 Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 487

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- The tyre loses air pressure rapidly.

Deflation Warning System

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on under the following conditions:

• There is a heavier and uneven load on the tyres than the condition at calibration.

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), safety support, Road Departure Mitigation, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Deflation Warning System Calibration

You must start deflation warning system calibration every time you:

- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before calibrating the deflation warning system:

- Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres.
 - Checking Tyres P. 487

Make sure:

- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The transmission is in **P**.
- The power mode is in ON.

The calibration process requires approximately 20 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 35-105 km/h.

During this period, if the power system is turned on and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the calibration process is not yet complete.

If the tyre chains are installed, remove them before calibrating the deflation warning system.

If the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.

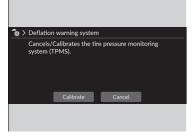


When you calibrate the deflation warning system, do the following.

- Basic Operation P. 208
- **1.** Set the power mode to ON.
- 2. Select Home.



3. Select **Vehicle Settings**.



- 4. Select **Deflation warning system**.
- 5. Select Cancel or Calibrate.
- If the **Calibration Failed to Start.** message appears, repeat step 5.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

Blind Spot Information System*

When the system detects vehicles approaching from behind in adjacent lanes, the appropriate indicator comes on, providing assistance when you change lanes.

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the blind spot information system has limitations. Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes. Overreliance on the blind spot information system may result in a collision.

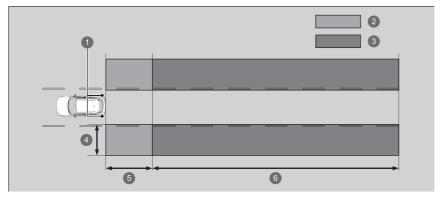
Have your vehicle checked by a dealer in the following situations:

- The rear bumper or area around the radar sensors is strongly impacted.
- The indicator does not come on even if a vehicle in the alert zone should have been detected.
- The rear bumper or any system components need to be repaired.

If the rear bumper or any system components are repaired, the system will revert to alert zone 1 only until it is able to adapt and expand to alert zone 1 and 2.

■ How the System Works

The system activates when your vehicle is moving forward at about 20 km/h or above.



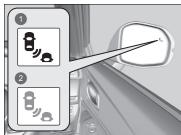
- 1 Radar Sensors: underneath the rear bumper corners
- 2 Alert Zone 1
- 3 Alert Zone 2

Alert zone range

- 4 Approx. 0.5 ~ 3 m from vehicle side.
- **6** Approx. 3 m from rear bumper.
- \bigcirc Approx. 3 ~ 25 m behind from rear bumper. (The faster the approaching vehicle, the further away it will be detected.)

The initially set alert zone is alert zone 1. Over time, after the vehicle has been driven on straight roads with traffic and roadside objects, the system will adapt and expand the alert zone (alert zone 1 and 2).

■ When the system detects a vehicle



- 1 Comes On
- 2 Blinks

Blind spot information system alert indicator: Located on the outside door mirror on both sides.

Comes on when:

- A vehicle approaches you from behind to overtake you at a speed difference of no more than about 50 km/h.
- You pass a vehicle at a speed difference of no more than about 20 km/h.

Blinks and a beeper sounds when:

You use the turn signal lever to signal a turn in the direction of the detected vehicle while the Blind spot information system alert indicator is on.

► The beeper sounds three times.

≫Blind Spot Information System *

For proper blind spot information system operation:

- Always keep the rear bumper and area around the radar sensors clean.
- Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.

The system is for your convenience only. Even if an object is within the alert zone, the following situations may occur:

- The blind spot information system alert indicator does not come on and the Blind spot information not available appears on the driver information interface.
- The blind spot information system alert indicator may come on even with the message displayed.

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), safety support, Road Departure Mitigation, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Blind Spot Information System On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

Switching the Display P. 116

Safety Support P. 123

The blind spot information system will stay on the previously selected on or off setting each time you turn the power system on.

You can change the setting for the blind spot information system.

▶ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 274

■ Blind Spot Information System Conditions and Limitations

The blind spot information system alert indicator may not come on under the following conditions:

- There is a large speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle in the adjacent lane.
- A vehicle is parked in a side lane.
- An object not detected by the radar sensors approaches or passes your vehicle.
- The vehicle driving in the adjacent lane is a motorcycle or other small vehicle.

The blind spot information system may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Making a turn at an intersection.
- Objects (guard rails, poles, trees, etc.) are detected.
- An object that does not reflect radio waves well or a motorcycle is in the alert zone.
- Driving on a curved road.
- A vehicle is moving from a far lane to the adjacent lane.
- The system picks up signal interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio wave transmitted from a facility nearby.
- The rear bumper or the area around the radar sensors is covered by dirt, mud, snow, ice, etc.
- The rear bumper or the area around the radar sensors has been damaged or deformed.
- In bad weather (heavy rain, snow, and fog).
- Making a short turn or driving on a bumpy road that slightly tilts the vehicle.
- An object such as a bicycle rack is attached to the rear of the vehicle.

Assists with functions such as acceleration, braking, and steering in order to reduce the burden on the driver, as well as help to avoid or reduce the severity of collisions.

Honda SENSING has the following functions.

■ The functions which do not require switch operations to activate

- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)
 P. 349
- Road Departure Mitigation System
 ▶ P. 362
- Lead Car Departure Notification System* ▶ P. 410
- Auto High-Beam

 P. 159

 P. 159
- Blind Spot Information System* ▶ P. 340
- Cross Traffic Monitor* ▶ P. 432
- Parking Sensor System
 ▶ P. 427

■ The functions which require switch operations to activate

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

 P. 372
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)
 ▶ P. 389
- Traffic Jam Assist* ₽ P. 400

Thai models

CAUTION: This equipment should be operated keeping the radiator at least 20 cm or more away from person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).

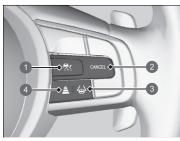
This telecommunication equipment conforms to NTC technical requirement.

This telecommunication equipment has EMF radiation conforms to NTC EMF exposure standard.

Make sure that all the tyres are of the same specified size, type, and brand, and that they are evenly worn. If you use tyres of different sizes, types, brands, or degree of wear, the system may not work properly.

Do not modify the suspension. Altering the height of the vehicle may prevent the system from working properly.

Operation Switches for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow/Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)/Traffic Jam Assist*





Button

Press to activate standby mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow.
Or press to cancel the system.

CANCEL Button

Press to cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow.

LKAS Button

Press to activate standby mode for LKAS and Traffic Jam Assist*.

Or press to cancel these systems.

Interval Button

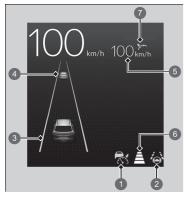
Press to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval.

6 RES/+ and SET/- Buttons

Press the **RES/+** button to set or resume the ACC with Low Speed Follow or increase the vehicle speed. Press the **SET/-** button to set the ACC with Low Speed Follow or decrease the vehicle speed.

■ Gauge Content

You can see the current status of Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) and Traffic Jam Assist*.



- Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to be activated.
 - White: The system is standby.
 - Green: The system is on.
 - Amber: There is a problem with the system.
- 2 Indicates that LKAS or Traffic Jam Assist* is ready to be activated.
 - White: The system is standby.
 - Green: The system is operating.
 - Amber: There is a problem with the system.
- 3 Indicates that LKAS or Traffic Jam Assist* is activated and whether or not traffic lane lines are detected.
 - White Lines: Traffic lane lines are detected.
 - Green Lines: The system is operating.
 - Amber Line: Lane departure is detected.
- Indicates whether or not ACC with Low Speed Follow detected the vehicle ahead.
 - Control target vehicle: White and outlined in green
 - Outside of control target vehicle: Grey

- **(5)** Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle speed.
 - White: Set Vehicle Speed
 - Grey: Prior Set Speed
- 6 Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle interval.
- Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the setting status.
 - Green: The system is on.
 - Grey: The system is not activated.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a vehicle approaching from the side, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle).

The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

○ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Important Safety Reminder

The CMBS is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collisions nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:

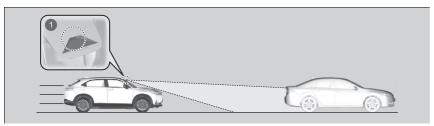
CMBS Conditions and Limitations P. 354

You can read about handling information for the front wide view camera equipped with this system.

Front Wide View Camera P. 414

When the CMBS is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be cancelled if the accelerator pedal is fully depressed.

■ How the system works



1 The front wide view camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 5 km/h or above and will search for a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle in front of you.

The CMBS activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle detected in front of you becomes about 5 km/h and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle drives at about 30 km/h or less and there is a chance of a frontal collision with a detected oncoming vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle when you turn right at an intersection.
- Your vehicle speed is about 100 km/h or less and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with:
- An oncoming or stationary vehicle detected in front of you.
- A pedestrian or moving bicycle detected in front of you.
- A vehicle approaching from the side in front of you.

The front wide view camera in the CMBS is also designed to detect pedestrians.

However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions.

Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

CMBS Conditions and Limitations P. 354

The CMBS will be cancelled when your vehicle stops or the system determines there no longer is the potential for a collision.

The CMBS may also be cancelled when a driver operates the steering wheel and the brake or accelerator pedal to avoid a collision.

■ When the system activates



The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

➤ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)

- 1 Visual Alerts
- 2 Audible Alert

You can change the distance (**Far/Normal/Near**) between vehicles at which the system's earliest collision alert will come on.

▶ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 274

When in **Far**, visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in **Normal** setting, and in **Near**, at a shorter distance than in **Normal**.

■ Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles		CMBS				
		The sensors detect a vehicle	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Braking		
Stage one	3 4 6 1 2	There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	The visual alert flashes. If the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you continues to decrease, the audible alert sounds in addition to the visual alert flashing. ▶ The collision warning distance can be changed. ▶ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 274	_		
Stage two	0 2	The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Visual and audible alerts.	Lightly applied		
Stage three	1 2	The CMBS determines that a collision is unavoidable.	visudi dilu duulbie dierts.	Forcefully applied		
1 Your Vehicle 4 Normal						

2 Vehicle Ahead

6 Near

Far

CMBS On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

Switching the Display P. 116

Safety Support P. 123

The CMBS is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

∑Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

You cannot turn the CMBS off while driving.

The CMBS may automatically shut off, and the safety support indicator (amber) and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) indicator (amber) will come and stay on under certain conditions.

MBS Conditions and Limitations P. 354

The CMBS is not activated for about 15 seconds after the power system is turned on.

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), safety support, Road Departure Mitigation, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behaviour of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

CMBS Conditions and Limitations

In the following situations, the front wide view camera may be unable to correctly detect vehicles, pedestrians, moving bicycles, or road conditions, potentially causing the CMBS to operate improperly.

Front Wide View Camera P. 414

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- There is little contrast between objects and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles (including motorcycles), pedestrians, moving bicycles, or road surfaces.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as vehicles and pedestrians.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, vehicles [including motorcycles], pedestrians, or moving bicycles may not be illuminated).

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on curvy, winding, or undulating roads.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

■ Vehicle conditions

- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- Camera vision is blocked by drops of water from the window washer, or by the wiper blades.
- Operation of the vehicle is unstable due to a slippery road, etc.

- Examples of limitations on the correct detection of the front wide view camera due to the condition of the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicles, vehicles approaching from the side, pedestrians, or moving bicycles
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead
 of you, oncoming vehicle, a vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or
 moving bicycle ahead of you is too short.
- The vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, a vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle suddenly cuts in front of or jumps out in front of you.
- A bicycle or sideways-facing vehicle is stopped.
- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you is sideways
 or facing diagonally.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, a vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising them.
- When several pedestrians are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When several bicycles are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When a pedestrian or moving bicycle crosses the road too quickly.
- A pedestrian or moving bicycle approaches from the opposite direction.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you or oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- When part of a pedestrian (heads, limbs, etc.) is hidden by a carried object.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, when their hands are raised, or they are running.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 1 metre or taller than about 2 metres in height.
- When the pedestrian is pushing a stroller or bicycle.
- A vehicle is approaching diagonally from the side.
- A specially-shaped vehicle (such as a tank lorry or a lorry without a luggage) is approaching from the side.
- A vehicle approaching from the side is driving on a curve or hill.

■ Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation

- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you is a small motorcycle, motorcycle with a sidecar, wheelchair, three-wheeled vehicle, or other specially shaped vehicle.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a luggage, or a narrow vehicle.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle is not in front of the vehicle.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle is significantly large.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle approaching from the side is significantly large.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) or moving bicycle in front of you slows suddenly.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel to avoid a collision.
- When you approach the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrians, or moving bicycles while accelerating rapidly or operating the steering wheel (except when turning right at an intersection etc.)*1.
- When the moving bicycle is a child-sized bicycle, folding bicycle, three-wheeler or other bicycle with small tyres, or a long bicycle like a tandem bicycle.
- When the front wide view camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, a vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle.
- When a vehicle (including motorcycles) that has an extremely high minimum ground clearance is ahead of you or approaching from the side.

^{*1:} When there is a possibility of a frontal collision with the oncoming vehicle while turning right, the CMBS is activated. However, it may not be activated if you suddenly turn the steering wheel.

■ Automatic shutoff

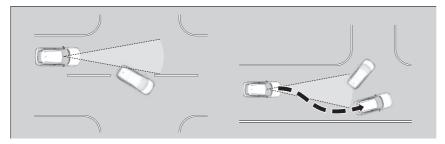
The CMBS may automatically shut itself off and the safety support indicator (amber) and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) indicator (amber) come and stay on when:

- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- The front wide view camera temperature gets too high.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (incorrect tyre size, flat tyre, etc.). Once the conditions that caused the CMBS to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

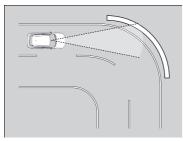
■ With Little Chance of a Collision

Even if there is little chance of a collision, the CMBS may activate under the following conditions:

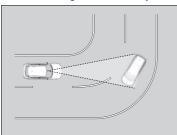
- Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.
- Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.



- When passing through a low or narrow gate at a speed well over the speed limit.
- When there are traffic signs or structures such as guard rails beside the road along a curve.



• When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where the oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.



• When approaching stationary vehicles or walls, such as when parking.

- A vehicle approaches from the side as it is driving through a curve.
- You pass by a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle that is turning left or right.
- You pass in front of a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle that is approaching from the side.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle turns left or right while approaching your vehicle from the side.
- You attempt to pass in front of a vehicle (including motorcycles) or bicycle while you are turning left or right.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles) or bicycle is attempting to pass in front of your vehicle while you are turning left or right.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle enters the path of your vehicle and stops in front of you.
- When you are turning left or right, a crossing pedestrian enters the path of your vehicle and stops in front of you.
- You pass close by the side of a vehicle parked on the street.

Road Departure Mitigation System

Hong Kong and Macau models

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder) or a detected oncoming vehicle.

Except Hong Kong and Macau models

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

≫Road Departure Mitigation System

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the Road Departure Mitigation system has limitations.

Overreliance on the Road Departure Mitigation system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

Hong Kong and Macau models

The Road Departure Mitigation system alerts you when the system detects that you are approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder, an oncoming vehicle, or drifting into another lane without using a turn signal.

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect all lane markings or every instance of lane drift. The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect that you are approaching the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel) or an oncoming vehicle.

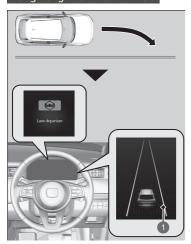
The Road Departure Mitigation system may not be able to assist you depending on weather, speed or road conditions

Except Hong Kong and Macau models

The Road Departure Mitigation system only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect all lane markings or lane or roadway departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

How the System Works

Hong Kong and Macau models



Amber line

The front wide view camera behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings in white or yellow, the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel) or a detected oncoming vehicle.

If your vehicle approaches any detected lane markings, the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel) or a detected oncoming vehicle when the turn signals have not been engaged, the system activates.

- ▶ If the system cannot detect lane markings (in white or yellow), no assistance will be provided to avoid approaching oncoming vehicles. In addition to a visual alert, the system assists with steering and alerts you with rapid steering wheel vibrations to help you remain within the detected lane.
 - ► How to Customize the Vehicle Settings
 P. 274

As a visual alert, the **Lane departure** message appears on the driver information interface.

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder) or an oncoming vehicle.

■ Road Departure Mitigation System

The Road Departure Mitigation system is not activated for about 15 seconds after the power system is turned on.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

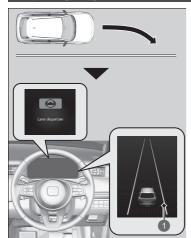
Front Wide View Camera P. 414

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

Road Departure Mitigation System Conditions and Limitations P. 368

There are times when you may not notice the Road Departure Mitigation system functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions.

Except Hong Kong and Macau models



The front wide view camera located behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings (in white or yellow). If your vehicle is getting too close to detected lane markings without a turn signal activated, the system, in addition to a visual alert, applies steering torque and alerts you with rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, to help you remain within the detected lane.

► How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 274

As a visual alert, the **Lane departure** message appears on the driver information interface.

Amber line

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings.

Hong Kong and Macau models

You can change the settings for the Road Departure Mitigation system.

If LKAS is off, the message below may appear if the system has determined that there is a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, the outer edge of the pavement (into a grass or gravel road shoulder) or oncoming vehicle.

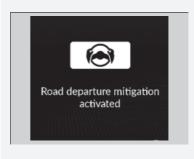
▶ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

Except Hong Kong and Macau models

You can change the settings for the Road Departure Mitigation system.

If LKAS is off, the message below may appear if the system has determined that there is a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings.

► How to Customize the Vehicle Settings
P. 274



All models



Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you. After that, the Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator comes on, the Road Departure Mitigation steering assist is temporarily stopped, and the system will only alert you with the warning sound.

After a few minutes, the Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator goes off and the Road Departure Mitigation system is fully restored.

How the System Activates

The system activates when all of the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking, or steering.
- The lane markings are white (yellow).

 The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.

Hong Kong and Macau models

► When oncoming vehicles are running The vehicle is travelling between about 30 and 180 km/h.

Hong Kong and Macau models

• The outer edge of the pavement is grass or gravel road shoulder. The vehicle is travelling between about 30 and 180 km/h.

➤ How the System Activates

The Road Departure Mitigation system may automatically shut off and the safety support indicator (amber) and Road Departure Mitigation indicator (amber) come and stay on.

- Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber) P. 110
- **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 112

The Road Departure Mitigation system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

■ Road Departure Mitigation System On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

Switching the Display P. 116

Safety Support P. 123

The Road Departure Mitigation system is in the previously selected on or off setting each time you start the engine.

■Road Departure Mitigation System On and Off

When you have selected **Warning only**, the system does not operate the steering wheel.

► How to Customize the Vehicle Settings
P. 274

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), safety support, Road Departure Mitigation, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Road Departure Mitigation System Conditions and Limitations

Hong Kong and Macau models

The system may not properly detect lane markings (in white or yellow), the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder) or an oncoming vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

Except Hong Kong and Macau models

The system may not properly detect lane markings and the position of your vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

■ Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines, the road surface, or oncoming vehicles may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.

Hong Kong and Macau models

• The outer edge of the road is bordered by objects, materials, etc. other than grass or gravel.

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or deteriorated lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- Passing through a junction.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.

■ Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.

Hong Kong and Macau models

Examples of limitations on detection due to the condition of oncoming vehicles

- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle ahead of you is sideways.
- The oncoming vehicle jumps out in front of you.
- When the oncoming vehicle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- The headlights of an oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- The distance between your vehicle and the oncoming vehicle is too short.
- Part of the oncoming vehicle is not visible due to the vehicle ahead of you.
- There are multiple oncoming lanes or turning lanes.
- The vehicle in the adjacent lane is parked or moving at an extremely slow speed.

Hong Kong and Macau models

■ Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation

- When the oncoming vehicle is specially-shaped.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the oncoming vehicle.

Hong Kong and Macau models

■ With Little Chance of a Collision

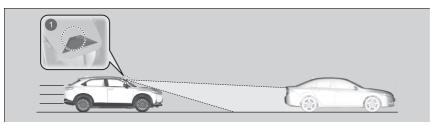
The Road Departure Mitigation system may activate in the below conditions.

• When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

When ACC with Low Speed Follow slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.



- 1 The front wide view camera is located behind the rearview mirror.
- Vehicle speed for ACC with Low Speed Follow: A vehicle is detected ahead within ACC with Low Speed Follow range – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at speeds up to 160 km/h.
 - No vehicle is detected within ACC with Low Speed Follow range ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at the speed of 30 km/h or above.
- Shift position for ACC with Low Speed Follow: In D.

Madaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

AWARNING

Improper use of ACC with Low Speed Follow can lead to a crash.

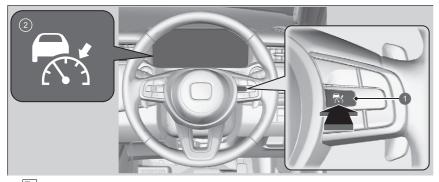
Use ACC with Low Speed Follow only when driving on motorways and in good road and weather conditions.

AWARNING

ACC with Low Speed Follow has limited braking capability and may not stop your vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a vehicle that quickly stops in front of you.

Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal if the conditions require.

■ How to activate the system



- 1 Button
 Press the button on the steering wheel.
- 2 The Indicator (White) is on in the gauge.

 ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to use.

Madaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

AWARNING

Exiting a vehicle that has been stopped while the ACC with Low Speed Follow system is operating can result in the vehicle moving without operator control.

A vehicle that moves without operator control can cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never exit a vehicle when the vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow.

Important Reminder

As with any system, there are limits to ACC with Low Speed Follow. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

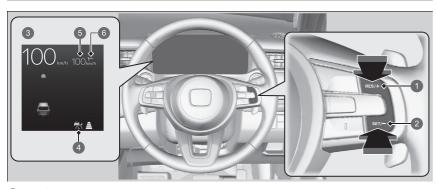
Front Wide View Camera P. 414

ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

■ ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations P. 379

When not using ACC with Low Speed Follow: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the $\boxed{\mathbb{R}}$ button.

■ To Set the Vehicle Speed



- RES/+ Button
 Press and release
- 2 SET/- Button
 Press and release
- 3 On when ACC with Low Speed Follow begins
- 4 Indicator (Green)
- Set Vehicle Speed (White)
- 6 Setting Status (Green)

Madaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Do not use ACC with Low Speed Follow under the following conditions:

- On roads with frequent lane change or continuous stop and go traffic, ACC with Low Speed Follow cannot keep an appropriate distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.
- On roads with bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.), ACC with Low Speed Follow may not detect the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you properly.
- On roads with slippery or icy surfaces. The wheels may spin out and your vehicle may lose the control on the condition.
- On roads with steep uphill or steep downhill slopes.
- On roads with undulating slopes.

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), safety support, Road Departure Mitigation, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

When driving at about 30 km/h or above: Take your foot off the pedal and press the RES/+ or SET/- button when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC with Low Speed Follow begins.

When driving slower than about 30 km/h: If the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is not depressed, pressing the button fixes the set speed to about 30 km/h regardless of current vehicle speed.

If your vehicle is stationary, you can set the vehicle speed even with the brake pedal depressed.



When ACC with Low Speed Follow starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars, and set speed appear on the gauge.

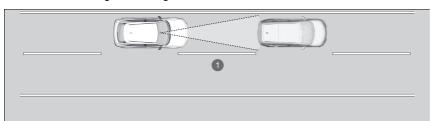
- Setting Status (Green)
- 2 Set Vehicle Speed
- 4 Set Vehicle Interval

When in Operation

■ There is a vehicle ahead

ACC with Low Speed Follow monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC with Low Speed Follow range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC with Low Speed Follow system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

≥ To Set or Change Following-interval P. 384



ACC with Low Speed Follow Range: 120 m

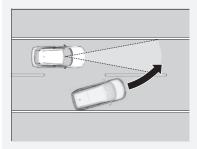


1 A vehicle icon appears on the gauge.

When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed comes in or cuts in front of you and is detected by the camera, your vehicle starts to slow down.

When in Operation ■

If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface.



Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.



Audible Alert

■ There is no vehicle ahead



Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.

If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from travelling at the set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

While driving down steep hills, ACC with Low Speed Follow brakes to inhibit excessive acceleration for maintaining the set speed. However, the vehicle speed may become faster than the set speed.

■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC with Low Speed Follow range. ACC with Low Speed Follow stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes an appropriate speed for keeping the following-interval while a vehicle ahead is within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.

When in Operation ■ The Control of the Contr

Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC with Low Speed Follow may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC with Low Speed Follow detecting range. A vehicle detect beep on and off can be selected.

► How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 274

Limitations

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC with Low Speed Follow. Additionally, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations P. 379

■ A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with Low Speed Follow range and slows to a stop



Your vehicle also stops, automatically. The **Stopped** message appears on the gauge. When the vehicle ahead of you starts again, if you press the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button, or depress the accelerator pedal, ACC with Low Speed Follow operates again within the previously set speed.

- Setting Status (Green)
- 2 ki Indicator (Green)

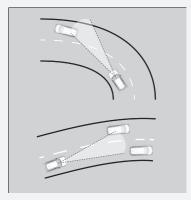


If no vehicle is ahead of you before you resume driving, depress the accelerator pedal and ACC with Low Speed Follow will operate again within the prior set speed.

- Setting Status (Green)
- 2 MIndicator (Green)

When in Operation ■ Continuous States States

 ACC with Low Speed Follow may temporarily control the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle in adjacent lane or surroundings of your vehicle depending on the road conditions (e.g., curves) or vehicle conditions (e.g., operating the steering wheel or the vehicle location in the lane).



 When the vehicle ahead of you moves away, such as when entering an interchange or rest area, ACC with Low Speed Follow may continue to maintain the set following-interval for a short time.

ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC with Low Speed Follow functions.

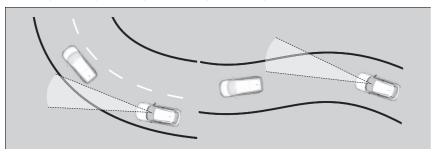
Front Wide View Camera P. 414

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles or road surfaces.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, the whole vehicle may not be illuminated).
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).

■ Roadway conditions

• Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads.



- Driving on rutted roads (snowy or unpaved roads, etc.).
- Puddles or a film of water is on the road surface.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

■ Vehicle conditions

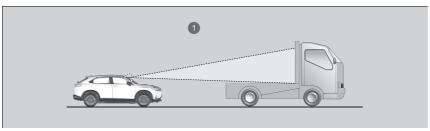
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

■ Examples of conditions under which the camera may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you

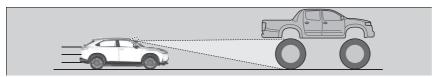
- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- When the vehicle ahead of you blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- When the height of a vehicle ahead of you is low.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.

■ Examples of conditions under which the system may not work properly

- A vehicle ahead of you stops and the speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is significantly large.
- When the vehicle ahead of you slows suddenly.
- When a vehicle ahead of you is a three-wheeled vehicle or specially shaped vehicle.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a luggage, or a narrow vehicle.



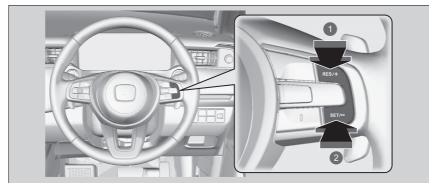
- **1** A front wide view camera detects upper section of an empty carrier lorry.
- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on the edge of the lane.
- When the vehicle ahead of you is a narrow vehicle such as a motorcycle.
- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle ahead of you is extremely high.



• When the camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.

■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button on the steering wheel.



- 1 To increase speed
- 2 To decrease speed
- Each time you press the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you press and hold the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h accordingly.

∑To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

When you depress the accelerator pedal and then press and release the **SET/–** button, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

■ To Set or Change Following-interval



1 Interval Button

Press the interval button to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval. Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-intervals.

Determine the most appropriate followinginterval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation. The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

Following-interval		When the Set Speed is:	
		80 km/h	104 km/h
Short		26.6 metres 1.2 sec	33.7 metres 1.2 sec
Middle	Ā	34.6 metres 1.6 sec	44.9 metres 1.6 sec
Long	A	43.9 metres 2.0 sec	57.1 metres 2.0 sec
Extra Long	A	53.6 metres 2.4 sec	70.0 metres 2.4 sec

When your vehicle stops automatically because a vehicle detected ahead of you has stopped, the interval between the two vehicles will vary based on the ACC with Low Speed Follow interval setting.

∑To Set or Change Following-interval

The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking interval from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum intervals or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver's responsibility to respect those laws.

■ To Cancel



- **1 CANCEL** Button
- 2 🕏 Button

To cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow, do any of the following:

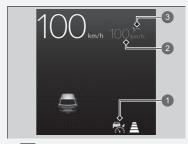
- Press the CANCEL button.
 - The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).
- Press the 🕏 button.
 - indicator (green) goes off.
- Depress the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving forward.
 - ► The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).

∑To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have cancelled ACC with Low Speed Follow, you can activate the ACC with Low Speed Follow with the prior set speed displayed on the gauge (in grey) by pressing the **RES/+** button even if the vehicle is stopped.

When you turn the ACC with Low Speed Follow off by pressing the **CANCEL** button or depressing the brake pedal, the prior set speed is displayed on the gauge in grey.

When pressing the **RES/+** button, the ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated with displayed speed. If the sindicator (white) is displayed and you press the **RES/+** button, but no prior set speed (in grey) is displayed, the speed will be set to your vehicle's current speed.



- 1 Indicator (White)
- Prior Set Speed (Grey)
- 3 Setting Status (Grey)

■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the gauge when ACC with Low Speed Follow is automatically cancelled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC with Low Speed Follow to automatically cancel:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected, or the tyres are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road for extended periods, or driving off road.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA, or CMBS is activated.
- When the VSA system indicator comes on.
- When the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range is too close to your vehicle.
- When accelerating rapidly.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- The vehicle is loaded heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- When passing through a dark place, such as tunnel.
- When the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on.
- The vehicle has repeatedly applied the brakes to maintain the set speed (for example, you are descending a long slope).
- When the system doesn't detect any driving actions from the driver for a certain amount of time while the LKAS is also activated.

∑To Cancel

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC with Low Speed Follow has been turned off using the button. Press the button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

The ACC with Low Speed Follow automatic cancellation can be also triggered by the following causes. In these cases, the parking brake will be automatically applied.

- The driver's seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes.
- The power system is turned off.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

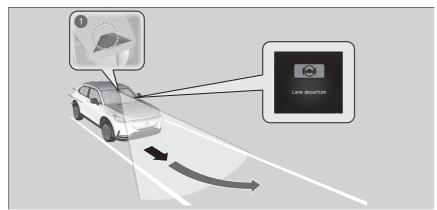
Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

■ Steering input assist

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.

■ Tactile, audible and visual alerts

Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, audible and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.



1 Front wide view camera: Monitors the lane lines

∑Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not an autonomous driving system and always requires driver attention and control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the windscreen and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition.

It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

Front Wide View Camera P. 414

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

EXAS Conditions and Limitations P. 396

When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.

If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

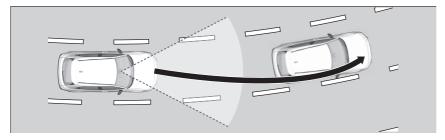
∑Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be cancelled. When a lane is detected, the system will recover automatically.

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), safety support, Road Departure Mitigation, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.

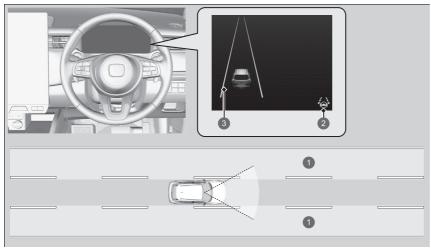


∑Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

The LKAS may not function as designed while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration, and audible and visual warnings.



- Warning Area
- 2 LKAS Indicator (Green)
- 3 Amber Line

When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.

• The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.

1. Press the LKAS button

The system is standby.

lines appear on the gauge.

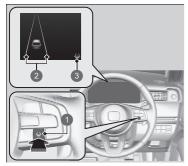
gauge.

LKAS indicator (white) appears on the

▶ If traffic lane lines are detected, white

- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not suddenly depressed.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.

■ How to activate the system



- LKAS Button
- White Lines
- 3 LKAS Indicator (White)

If the vehicle drifts towards either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Follow the points below to properly activate the system:

- Always keep the windscreen around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not touch the camera lens.
- Do not attach a sticker to the area around the camera

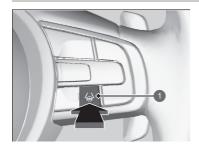
If LKAS button is pressed when the system can be used, LKAS is on without standby.



- LKAS Indicator (Green)
- 2 Green Lines

- **2.** Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.
 - ➤ The LKAS indicator changes from white to green, and white lines change to green once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

■ To Cancel



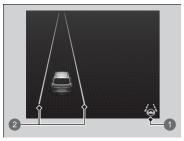
1 LKAS Button

Press the LKAS button

The LKAS is turned off every time you turn the power system off, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

■ The LKAS may be automatically suspended when:

When the LKAS is suspended under the following circumstances, green lines on the gauge change to white lines or disappear, and the beeper sounds (if activated).



- 1 LKAS Indicator (White)
- White Lines

- Your vehicle is driving to the right or the left of the lane.
- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is turned quickly.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- Driving through a sharp curve.
- The ABS or VSA system engages.
- The brake pedal is suddenly depressed.
- Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 185 km/h.

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

■ The LKAS may be automatically cancelled when:

In the following cases, traffic lane lines may disappear on the gauge, the beeper may sound, and the LKAS may be automatically cancelled:

- The front wide view camera temperature gets extremely high.
- The front wide view camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, is dirty.

∑The LKAS may be automatically suspended when:

You can change the setting for the LKAS. LKAS suspended beep on and off can be selected.

► How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 274

LKAS Conditions and Limitations

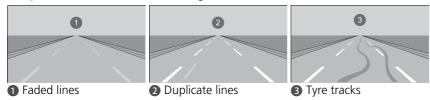
The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of the lane under certain conditions, including the following:

■ Environmental conditions

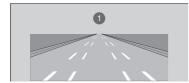
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or deteriorated lane markings.

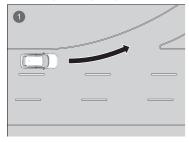


- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.



- Very wide or narrow traffic lane
- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.

- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through a junction.



1 Lane void of lines at junction

■ Vehicle conditions

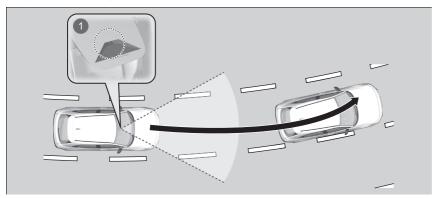
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.

Traffic Jam Assist*

The Traffic Jam Assist system uses a front wide view camera mounted to the upper portion of the windscreen to detect and monitor left and right white (or yellow) traffic lane lines. Based on inputs from the front wide view camera, the system can apply steering torque to keep your vehicle in the centre of the detected lane.

■ How Traffic Jam Assist works

When you are in heavy traffic and Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is active, the Traffic Jam Assist system, upon detecting the traffic lane lines, will apply steering torque to help keep your vehicle in the centre of the lane.



1 Front Wide View Camera
Detects left and right white (or yellow) traffic lane lines

When you use the turn signal to indicate a lane change, Traffic Jam Assist is temporarily deactivated. It is reactivated once the vehicle is travelling in the centre of the lane and the system has detected the traffic lane lines.

Traffic Jam Assist *

Important Safety Reminders

Traffic Jam Assist is for your convenience only. It is not an autonomous driving system and always requires driver attention and control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

Traffic Jam Assist is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

Front Wide View Camera P. 414

The Traffic Jam Assist only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The Traffic Jam Assist may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition.

It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

Traffic Jam Assist may not work properly under certain conditions:

☑ Traffic Jam Assist: Conditions and Limitations P 406

When the driver takes full control of the steering, the steering assist function is temporarily cancelled.

The torque applied to the steering may not be noticeable when the driver has full control of the steering, or when the surface of the road is rough or uneven.

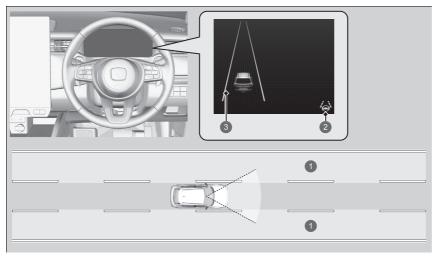
▼ Traffic lam Assist *

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), safety support, Road Departure Mitigation, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the Traffic Jam Assist alerts you with an audible alert as well as a warning display.



- Warning Area
- 2 LKAS Indicator (Green)
- 3 Amber Line

■ Traffic Jam Assist Activation

Traffic Jam Assist is activated when all of the following conditions exist:

- LKAS is activated.
- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 0 and 72 km/h.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The driver is gripping the steering wheel.
- The shift position is in **D**.

Do not use Traffic Jam Assist in any of the following situations:

- You are travelling on a road with sharp curves.
 - ▶ The system may not allow your vehicle to respond in a manner best suited for the road conditions.
- You are entering a toll booth, interchange, service area, or parking area.
- You are driving in adverse weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- The surface of the road is slippery; for example, it is icy or covered with snow.
 - ▶ The tyres may slip, causing you to lose control of the vehicle.

▼ Traffic Jam Assist Activation

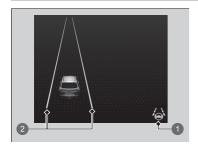
Refer to the following page for proper handling of the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS):

■ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 389

Refer to the following page for steering buttons and displays:

- ▶ Operation Switches for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow/Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)/Traffic Jam Assist* P. 346
- **⊇** Gauge Content P. 347

■ How Traffic Jam Assist Works



- 1 LKAS Indicator (Green)
- 2 Green Lines

Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.

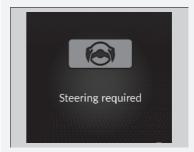
▶ The LKAS indicator changes from white to green, and white lines change to green once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

If your vehicle veers too far to the right or the left of the white (or yellow) traffic lane lines while Traffic Jam Assist is active, deactivate Traffic Jam Assist and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

In some cases the system cannot properly detect the traffic lane lines and, as a result, will not provide steering assistance.

☑ Traffic Jam Assist: Conditions and Limitations P 406

If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel or does not adequately maintain control of steering, the warning below will appear.



If the driver does not grip the steering wheel after the warning above has repeatedly appeared, a warning buzzer will sound and Traffic Jam Assist will be cancelled.

Cancelling Traffic Jam Assist

Press the LKAS button to cancel Traffic Jam Assist.

■ Traffic Jam Assist may be automatically suspended when:

- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is turned sharply.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- You are driving through a sharp curve.
- The brake pedal is suddenly depressed.

Once these conditions no longer exist, Traffic Jam Assist automatically resumes.

■ Traffic Jam Assist may be automatically cancelled when:

- The temperature of the camera is too high.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, is dirty.

Upon cancelation, the lane lines will disappear from the screen and the beeper may sound.

∑Traffic Jam Assist may be automatically suspended when:

You can change the setting for the Traffic Jam Assist suspended beep on and off when you select the **Lane keep assist beep** on the audio/information screen.

► How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 274

Continued 405

■ Traffic Jam Assist: Conditions and Limitations

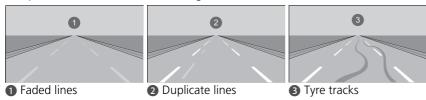
The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of the lane under certain conditions, including the following:

■ Environmental conditions

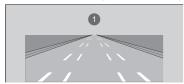
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- When the lane lines or road surface are not visible, such as when the distance to the vehicle in front of you is extremely short or when at a junction.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or deteriorated lane markings.

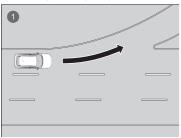


- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.



- Very wide or narrow traffic lane
- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through a junction.



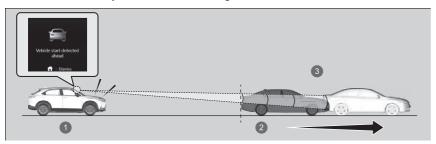
1 Lane void of lines at junction

■ Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

Informs you with visual and audible alerts when your vehicle is stopped even though the vehicle ahead of you has started moving.



- When stopped
- Vehicle ahead is stopped
- Sehicle ahead starts moving

■ How the System Works

The system detects a stopped vehicle in front of you, on the condition that the vehicles are within 10 m of each other and both vehicles have been stopped for a period of time. When the detected vehicle moves but yours does not, the system will activate.

■ When the shift position is in D

The system will work when the brake pedal is depressed, the brake hold function of the automatic brake hold system is in operation, or the vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow.

∑Lead Car Departure Notification System *

AWARNING

Lead Car Departure Notification System is an supplemental system that provides driving assistance. It is not a system that informs you if it is safe to start driving.

Improper use of this system may lead to a collision.

Always visually confirm the safety of your surroundings before driving the vehicle and maintain a safe following-interval when driving.

You can read about handling information for the camera located behind the rearview mirror

Front Wide View Camera P. 414

Like other assistance systems, this system may not function properly depending on weather, environmental conditions, and so on.

■ When the shift position is in N

The system will work when the vehicle is stopped, the brake pedal is depressed, the parking brake is in operation, or the brake hold function of the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

You can choose from two system operation timing modes, **Normal** and **Early**. ▶ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 274

In Normal mode, the system operates when the vehicle ahead of you has moved approximately 3 m from where it stopped.

In Early mode, the system operates as soon as movement has been detected.

■ When the System Activates



the driver information interface when the system is activated.

The beeper sounds and a message appears on

■Lead Car Departure Notification System*

You can turn off the Lead Car Departure Notification System.

▶ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 274

The Lead Car Departure Notification System will not activate while the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (amber) is on.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 372

■ Lead Car Departure Notification System Conditions and Limitations

In the following conditions, the system may or may not activate regardless of whether the vehicle ahead of you starts to move.

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles or road surfaces.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, the whole vehicle may not be illuminated).
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).

■ Roadway conditions

 Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads or immediately after turning to the left or right.

■ Vehicle conditions

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The vehicle is only stopped for a short time.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

■ Examples of conditions under which the camera may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you

- The vehicle ahead of you is only stopped for a short time.
- The space between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- The vehicle ahead of you is moving too slowly.
- The vehicle ahead of you suddenly turns around or to the left or right.
- The vehicle ahead of you blends into the scenery and can't be detected.
- The vehicle ahead of you has only one or neither of their taillights on.

■ Examples of other limitations on detection

- There is a pedestrian, bicycle, motorcycle, or other specially-shaped vehicle in front of you.
- Another vehicle, pedestrian, or bicycle comes between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.
- The vehicle ahead of you is not directly in front of you.

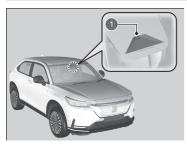
■ Examples of other limitations on system operation

- The camera cannot correctly detect the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.
- The vehicle ahead of you has very high ground clearance.
- The vehicle ahead of you, such as a lorry without a trailer, has a rear that is smaller than the front.

Front Wide View Camera

The camera, used in systems such as Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation System, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), Traffic Jam Assist*, Lead Car Departure Notification System*, and Auto High-Beam is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate its functions.

Camera Location and Handling Tips



Front Wide View Camera

This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help to reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun when parking. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

>> Front Wide View Camera

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windscreen, the bonnet, or the front grille that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.

Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreen within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreen with a genuine Honda replacement windscreen. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windscreen may also cause the system to operate abnormally.

After replacing the windscreen, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windscreen and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

>> Front Wide View Camera

If the Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Camera temperature too high message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the airflow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the Some driver assist system cannot operate: Clean front windscreen or poor viewing condition. message appears:

• Park your vehicle in a safe place, and make sure the windscreen is clean.

Clean the windscreen if it is dirty. If the message does not disappear after driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Braking

Brake System

■ Parking Brake

Use the electric parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. When the parking brake is applied, you can manually or automatically release it.



Electric Parking Brake Switch



1 Electric Parking Brake Switch

■ To apply

The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has 12-volt battery, no matter which position the power mode is in.

Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

- ▶ The indicator in the switch comes on.
- ► The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on.

■ To release

The power mode must be in ON in order to release the electric parking brake.

- 1. Depress the brake pedal.
- **2.** Press the electric parking brake switch.
 - ► The indicator in the switch goes off.
 - ➤ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle to start slowly and smoothly when facing downhill on steep hills.

■Brake System

When you depress the brake pedal, you may hear a whirring sound from the power system compartment. This is because the brake system is in operation, and it is normal.

▶ Parking Brake

You may hear the electric parking brake system motor operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the electric parking brake. This is normal.

The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the electric parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the electric parking brake if the 12-volt battery goes dead.

If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead P. 528

If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the electric servo brake system until the vehicle comes to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.

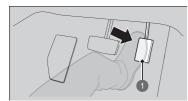
■ Automatic parking brake feature operation

If the automatic parking brake feature has been activated:

- The parking brake is applied automatically when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
- To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.
 - **▶** Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature P. 418

■ To release automatically

Depressing the accelerator pedal releases the electric parking brake. Use the accelerator pedal to release the electric parking brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.



Gently depress the accelerator pedal. When on a hill, it may require more accelerator input to release.

► The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

Accelerator Pedal

You can release the electric parking brake automatically when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The power system is on.
- The transmission is not in **P** or **N**.

▶ Parking Brake

In the following situations, the electric parking brake automatically operates.

- When the vehicle stops more than 10 minutes while Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow is activated.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with Low Speed Follow.
- When the power system is turned off, while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.
- When the vehicle stops with the automatic brake hold system activated for more than 10 minutes.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped and brake hold is applied.
- When the power system is turned off, while brake hold is applied.
- When there is a problem with the brake hold system while brake hold is applied.

If the electric parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

When the vehicle is travelling uphill, the accelerator pedal may need to be pressed farther to automatically release the electric parking brake.

The electric parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicator is on:

• Transmission system indicator

■ Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

With the power mode is in ON, carry out the following steps to either activate or deactivate the automatic parking brake feature.

- **1.** Change the shift position to **P**.
- **2.** Without depressing the brake pedal, pull up the electric parking brake switch.
 - ► Check that the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) has come on.
- **3.** Pull up and hold the parking brake switch. When you hear a beeping sound, release the switch and within three seconds pull up and hold the switch again.
- **4.** When you hear a sound indicating that the procedure is completed, release the switch.
 - Two beeps indicate that the feature has been activated.
 - ▶ One beep indicates that the feature has been deactivated.
 - ▶ When you have completed activating the feature, the parking brake will remain applied after you turn off the power system.
 - ➤ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

If you need to temporarily deactivate the feature for when having your vehicle towed, follow the procedure explained below.

- **1.** Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
- **2.** Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and then within two seconds push down the electric parking brake switch.
 - Activation and deactivation settings for the feature will not be affected.
 - ▶ Before temporarily deactivating the feature, make sure to first turn off the automatic brake hold system.
 - ➤ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

▶ Parking Brake

The electric parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Parking brake and brake system indicator (amber)
- VSA system indicator
- ABS indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator

Mactivating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

In cold climates, the parking brake may freeze in place if applied.

When parking the vehicle, chock the wheels and make sure the automatic parking brake feature is deactivated.

Also, when putting your vehicle through a conveyortype car wash or when having your vehicle towed, deactivate the automatic parking brake feature and leave the parking brake released.

■ Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

Brake Assist System P. 424

▶ Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 423

≫ Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Applying constant pressure to the brakes while going down a long hill can cause the brakes to heat up, resulting in a loss of stopping power. Therefore, when descending a long hill, release the accelerator pedal and allow regenerative braking to slow the vehicle down. To adjust the rate of deceleration, use the deceleration paddle selector.

When the high voltage battery has fully recharged, regenerative braking may not be possible.

▶ POWER/CHARGE Gauge P. 114

➡ High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge P. 114

Deceleration Paddle Selector P. 326

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

Continued 419

Automatic Brake Hold

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

■ Turning on the system



- Automatic Brake Hold Button
- 2 Comes On

Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the power system. Press the automatic brake hold button.

➤ The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.

The system is in the previously selected on or off setting each time you fasten the driver's seat belt and start the power system.

■ Automatic Brake Hold

AWARNING

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

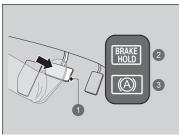
AWARNING

Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in P and applying the parking brake.

■ Activating the system

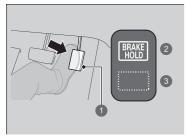


- 1 Brake Pedal
- 2 On
- Comes On

Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop. The transmission must not be in $\boxed{\mathbf{P}}$ or $\boxed{\mathbf{R}}$.

- ► The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.
- Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

■ Cancelling the system



- Accelerator Pedal
- 2 On
- Goes Off

Depress the accelerator pedal while the transmission is in a position other than $\boxed{\textbf{P}}$ or $\boxed{\textbf{N}}$. The system is cancelled and the vehicle starts to move.

► The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system continues to be on.

AWARNING

When using the automatic brake hold, keep your foot on the brake pedal until the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

If the vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Release your foot from the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

While the system is activated, you can turn off the power system or park the vehicle through the same procedure as you normally do.

₩ When Stopped P. 426

You may hear an operating noise if the vehicle moves while the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

Continued 421

■ The system automatically cancels when:

- You engage the electric parking brake.
- You depress the brake pedal and put the transmission into P or R.

■ The system automatically cancels and the parking brake is applied when:

- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The power system is turned off.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.

■ Turning off the automatic brake hold system



Automatic Brake Hold Button

2 Goes Off

Only the automatic brake hold system indicator comes on:

- Press the automatic brake hold button.
 - ➤ The automatic brake hold system indicator goes off.

When the automatic brake hold indicator comes on at the same time:

- Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.
 - ➤ The automatic brake hold system indicator and the automatic brake hold indicator go off.

∑Turning off the automatic brake hold system

Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

If you turn off the power system or unfasten the driver's seat belt while the automatic brake hold system is on, the automatic brake hold system will automatically turn off. In this case, when the driver's seat belt is fastened and the power system is turned back on, the automatic brake hold system will turn on without needing to press the automatic brake hold button.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

ABS

Helps to prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you to retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you can.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as "stomp and steer."

■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:

- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 10 km/h, the ABS stops.

Mari Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

Mari Anti-

NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tyre of the incorrect size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system.

While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not be operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS:

 You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:

- Motor sounds coming from the motor compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the power system has been turned on and while the vehicle accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.

These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.

Brake Assist System

Is designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

■ Brake assist system operation

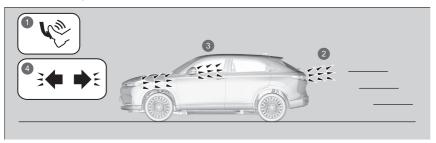
Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 50 km/h or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

■ When the system activates:



- 1 Hard Braking
- 2 Brake Lights Come On
- Hazard Warning Lights Flash
- 4 Hazard Warning Indicators Blink

The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:

- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.

The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard warning button pressed in.

If the ABS stops working for a certain period during braking, the emergency stop signal may not activate at all.

Parking Your Vehicle

When Stopped

- **1.** Depress the brake pedal firmly and come to a complete stop.
- 2. With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.
- **3.** Put the transmission into **P**.
 - ▶ Do not release the brake pedal until you have confirmed that P is shown on the shift position indicator.
- **4.** Turn off the power system.
 - ► The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off in about 30 seconds.

Always set the electric parking brake, especially if you are parked on an incline.

▶ Parking Your Vehicle

AWARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that P is shown on the shift position indicator.

When Stopped

NOTICE

The following can damage the driveline:

- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Changing to P before the vehicle stops completely.

When facing uphill, do not hold the vehicle by depressing the accelerator pedal.

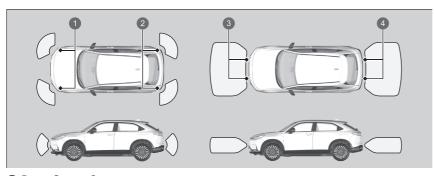
Doing so may cause the power system to overheat and fail.

In extremely cold temperatures, the electric parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the electric parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

Parking Sensor System

The corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper, driver information interface and audio/information screen let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

■ The Sensor Location and Range



- Front Corner Sensors
- 2 Rear Corner Sensors
- Front Centre Sensors
- 4 Rear Centre Sensors

▶ Parking Sensor System

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:

- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud, or dirt.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- There is something nearby that emits ultrasonic waves or high frequency sounds.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

The system may not detect these obstacles:

- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

The system may falsely detect obstacles in the following situations:

- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- When close to other vehicles with sonar sensors or other objects that emit ultrasonic waves.
- There is splashing water near the sensors due to heavy rains, etc.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

If you put any accessories (such as a bicycle rack)
on or around the rear sensors, the system may
activate if it detects these accessories as an
obstacle. In this case, turn off the rear sensor.

■ Turning off All Rear Sensors P. 431

■ Parking Sensor System On and Off



With the power mode in ON, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

The front corner, rear centre and rear corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in $\boxed{\mathbf{R}}$, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

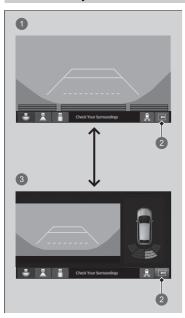
Parking Sensor System Button

The front corner and front centre sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in any position other than \boxed{P} or \boxed{R} , and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

▶ Parking Sensor System

When you set the power mode to ON, the system will be in the previously selected condition.

Screen Operation



You can switch between split view off and split view on by touching the split screen tab.

- Split View Off
- 2 Split Screen Tab
- 3 Split View On

Continued 429

■ When the Distance between Your Vehicle and Detected Obstacles Becomes Shorter

	Interval between beeps	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle		Indicator	Driver information interface	Audio/Information
		Corner Sensors	Centre Sensors		interrace	screen
	Moderate	_	Front: About 100-60 cm Rear: About 110-60 cm	Comes on*1/Blinks*2 in Yellow*3	Approaching object	
	Short	About 60-45 cm	About 60-45 cm	Comes on*1/Blinks*2 in Amber		
	Very short	About 45-35 cm	About 45-35 cm			
	Continuous	About 35 cm or less	About 35 cm or less	Comes on*1/Blinks*2 in Red		

- *1: On the driver information interface
- *2: On the audio/information screen
- *3: At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.
- 1 Indicators light up where the sensor detects an obstacle.

■ Turning off All Rear Sensors

To deactivate the rear sensors, please take the following steps:

- **1.** Make sure that the parking sensor system is not activated.
 - ▶ The indicator in the button turns off.
- 2. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
- **3.** Press and hold the parking sensor system button, and set the power mode to ON.
- **4.** Keep pressing the button for 10 seconds. Release the button when the indicator in the button flashes.
 - ► The beeper sounds once.
- **5.** While the indicator is flashing, press the button again. The indicator in the button turns off.
 - ▶ The beeper sounds twice. The rear sensors are now turned off. They will remain turned off until manually turned back on again. To turn the rear sensors on again, follow the above procedure. The beeper sounds three times when the rear sensors come back on.

∑Turning off All Rear Sensors

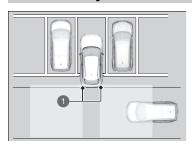
When you put the transmission into $\boxed{\mathbf{R}}$, the indicator in the parking sensor system button blinks as a reminder that the rear sensors have been turned off.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

Monitors the rear corner areas using the radar sensors when reversing, and alerts you if a vehicle approaching from a rear corner is detected.

The system is convenient when you are backing out of a parking space.

■ How the System Works



The system activates when:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The Cross Traffic Monitor is turned on.
 Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off P. 435
- The transmission is in **R**.
- Your vehicle is moving at 5 km/h or lower.

Radar sensors: Underneath the rear bumper corners

When a vehicle is detected approaching from a rear corner, Cross Traffic Monitor alerts you with a buzzer and a displayed warning.

The system will not detect a vehicle that approaches from directly behind your vehicle, nor will it provide alerts about a detected vehicle when it moves directly behind your vehicle.

The system does not provide alerts for a vehicle that is moving away from your vehicle, and it may alert for pedestrians, bicycles, or stationary objects.

○ Cross Traffic Monitor*

ACAUTION

Cross Traffic Monitor cannot detect all approaching vehicles and may not detect an approaching vehicle at all.

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to back up the vehicle before doing so may result in a collision.

Do not solely rely on the system when reversing; always also use your mirrors, and look behind and to the sides of your vehicle before reversing.

Cross traffic monitor may not detect or may delay detecting an approaching vehicle, or may alert detection without an approaching vehicle under the following conditions:

- An obstacle, such as another vehicle or a wall, near your vehicle's rear bumper, is blocking the radar sensor's scope.
- Your vehicle is moving at a speed of about 5 km/h or higher.
- A vehicle is approaching at a speed other than between about 10 km/h and 25 km/h.
- The system picks up external interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio wave transmitted from a facility nearby.

- Either corner of the rear bumper is covered with snow, ice, mud, or dirt.
- When there is bad weather.
- Your vehicle is on an incline.
- Your vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage in the rear.
- Your vehicle is reversing towards a wall, a pole, a vehicle, and so on.

If the rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

For proper operation, always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.

Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.

The parking sensor system's alerting buzzer overrides the Cross Traffic Monitor buzzer when the sensors are detecting obstacles at the closest range.

When the System Detects a Vehicle

An arrow icon appears on the side a vehicle is approaching on the audio/information screen.



- Arrow Icon
- 2 Normal View
- Wide View
- 4 Top Down View

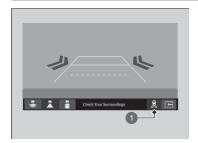
When the System Detects a Vehicle

If the so on the lower right changes to so in amber when the transmission is in R, mud, snow, ice and other debris may have accumulated in the vicinity of the sensor. The system is temporarily cancelled. Check the bumper corners for any obstructions, and thoroughly clean the area if necessary.

If the second comes on when the transmission is in R, there may be a problem with the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If the display remains the same with the transmission in $[\mathbb{R}]$, there may be a problem with the rear camera system and the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off



The system can be turned on and off on the audio/information screen by selecting the Cross Traffic Monitor icon.

You can also switch the system on and off from the customized feature on the audio/information screen.

Customized Features P. 265

Cross Traffic Monitor Icon

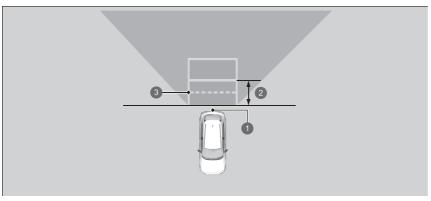
Multi-View Rear Camera

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view.

The display automatically changes to the rear view when the transmission is put into $\boxed{\mathbf{R}}$.

■ Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



- Camera
- 2 Approx. 1 m
- 3 Tailgate open range

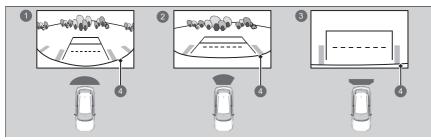
The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

The rear camera view is displayed prior to the audio/information screen.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

You can view three different camera modes on the audio/information screen. Touch the appropriate icon to switch the mode.



- 1 🛂 Wide view mode
- Normal view mode
- Top down view mode
- 4 Bumper
- If you were last using Wide view mode or Normal view mode, the same view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode before you turned off the power system, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you set the power mode to ON and put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode and 10 seconds elapsed after you took the transmission out of $\boxed{\mathbf{R}}$, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into $\boxed{\mathbf{R}}$.
- If you were using Top down view mode and put the transmission back into R within 10 seconds after you took it out of R, Top down view mode will be activated.

■ About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.

Customized Features P. 265

Fixed Guideline

ON: Guidelines appear when you put the transmission into $\boxed{\mathbf{R}}$.

OFF: Guidelines do not appear.

Dynamic Guideline

ON: Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.

OFF: Guidelines do not move.

If the vehicle's rear view is not displayed on the audio/ information screen while the shift position is in \boxed{R} , there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

When the parking sensor system detects any obstacles, the indicator will display.

▶ Parking Sensor System P. 427

Charging

Before Charging

Check the following items before you start charging your vehicle.

■ Safety Checklist

- The 230 volt charger draws approximately 10 amps. Make sure to use a dedicated and properly grounded circuit that can supply 10 amps continuously.
 - ► Have an electrician inspect the outlet you are using to see if it meets these criteria.
- Make sure you plug the charging cable directly into the wall outlet dedicated to vehicle charging.
 - ▶ Do not use extension cords, adaptors, or multi-outlet plugs between the charging cable and the outlet.
- Make sure the charging cable is fully uncoiled before use.
- Make sure the control box, charging connector, and charging cable are free from any damage, including cracks or frays.
 - ▶ If you find any damage to the devices, contact an authorized dealer.
- Make sure the charging connector and inlet are clean.
 - ▶ If you find any contamination or foreign object in the connector or inlet, contact an authorized dealer.
- Make sure the charging cable is dry.
 - ► Check that there is no water in the immediate area, and that your hands are dry.

Note: Outlet needs to be in good shape. Worn or damaged outlet will not make good contact with the plug. Ensure that the plug is fully inserted and does not come out of the outlet after installation. A loose connection will cause excessive heat build up within the plug and damage it.

○ Charging ○

AWARNING

Using a 230 volt wall outlet that is rated less than 10 amps or one that is powering other devices can cause a fire, seriously injuring you or others.

When using the 230 volt charger, use a dedicated and properly grounded circuit rated 10 amps or more. Consult an electrician if you are not sure.

AWARNING

Charging the High Voltage battery under the following conditions is a potential source of electric shock and fire, which can result in serious injury or death:

- Charging the battery during an electric storm.
- Using the charging cable near water or handling with wet hands.
- Using a charger, whose case is broken or cracked or whose cable is frayed or damaged.

Never charge the vehicle in any of the above situations.

Charge the High Voltage Battery Using a AC or CCS2 DC Charger

There are two ways to charge the High Voltage battery; by using the AC 230 volt (10 amp) charger or CCS2 DC charger.

Charging with	Suggested charging time*1*2
CCS2 DC (100 kW, 200 amp)	50 minutes (80% charge)
AC 230 V (10 amp)	30 hours (full charge)

^{*1:}Charging time varies depending on conditions, such as the remaining battery level and the ambient temperature.

The suggested full charging time in this table indicates the hours it may likely take for the High Voltage battery to be fully charged from the moment the low charge indicator (amber) comes on with the ambient temperature at 25°C.

○ Charging ○

AWARNING

Improper usage and handling of the 230 volt charger can cause a fire, seriously injuring you or others.

- Always insert the plug fully into a properly rated and grounded the wall outlet.
- Plug the charging cable directly to the wall outlet. Do not use extension cords or multi-plug adapters.
- Prevent the vehicle charging connector from becoming contaminated. Clean if necessary.







When the battery warming system is activated, the battery may take longer to charge.

When the 12-volt battery is disconnected, vehicle charging is not possible. After reconnecting the 12-volt battery, turn the power system on, then turn it off. Confirm that charging is possible.

Turning on the Power P. 315

^{*2:}Full charge: 0% to 100% charge

○ Charging ○

AWARNING

Using a charger that is damaged or modified can cause electrical shock and fire, which can result in serious injury or death.

Never disassemble or modify the charger. If the charger becomes damaged, stop using it and consult an authorized dealer.

NOTICE

Do not charge the vehicle with a vehicle cover on. It can cause a malfunction and damage the vehicle or charging components.

Inspect the charging cable plug and charging connector, as well as the vehicle's charge inlet, before use. If the plug or connector are dirty or otherwise contaminated, carefully clean them with a dry clean cloth before use. Do not wipe the metal part of the inlet and the charging connector. Also, if you are unable to clean the plug or connector, if the inlet is dirty, or if any are damaged or corroded, take the charging cable and vehicle to an authorized dealer for inspection and possible repair.

○ Charging ○

Before using a vehicle charging cable, inspect the cable for damage such as scratches, cracks, or tears. If you find any damage, do not use the charging cable; instead, take it to an authorized dealer for inspection.

If a blackout or other electrical interruption occurs during vehicle charging, the vehicle will automatically resume charging once power is restored.

To avoid damage to the charger, take these precautions:

- Do not hit the charging connector components with a hard object or drop them on the ground.
- Do not pull, twist, tangle, drag or step on the charging cable.
- Do not use or store near any sources of heat.
- Do not expose to liquids or use harsh chemicals to clean.

Even if the charging time exceeds 20 hours, the charging time shown on the driver information interface will be displayed as 20 hours.

EXECUTE: Charging Time Remaining P. 125

While charging, sound may not be heard from the radio due to electromagnetic noise.

Continued 441

Charging

Since the vehicle is charged with regenerative energy when you drive on a downward slope, regenerative braking may not be as effective when the vehicle is almost fully charged.

When charging in a high place such as a mountain or hill, do not fully charge your vehicle.

■ How to Charge (AC 230 V)



- Charge Indicator
- 2 Lid Open Button
- 3 AC 230 V Charge Inlet
- 4 Charge Lid Light



Charge Lid Release Button

- **1.** Put the transmission into P and turn the power system off.
 - ▶ Make sure the power system is off.
- **2.** Press and hold the lid open button, or press and hold the charge lid release button.
 - ► The charge lid opens.
 - ➤ The charge lid light comes on for a few minutes.
 - ► The charge indicator (white) blinks.

Lid open button control:

When the doors are locked

Press lid open button with keyless remote.

When the doors are unlocked

Press lid open button.

The 230 volt charger requires a properly grounded and dedicated circuit that is protected by a 10 amp or greater over-current protection device (circuit breaker). For more information consult an authorized dealer.

We recommend that a GFCI (ground-fault circuit interrupter) protected outlet be used to charge the vehicle. Follow the GFCI manufacturer's installation instructions, or consult an electrician if you are not sure about installation requirements.

Continued 443



- Charge Indicator
- 2 Release Tab
- Inlet Cap

- **3.** Press the cap release tab to open the inlet cap. Align and insert the charging connector into the vehicle's inlet until you hear a click.
 - ► The charge indicator (white) stops blinking, and change to blue on when charging starts.

Thai models

The High Voltage battery may not be charged even if the charging connector is properly connected to the vehicle's inlet when the charging timer is set.

▶ The High Voltage battery can be charged by disengaging and then reinserting the charging connector.

Be sure to follow the instructions and safety precautions provided with the AC charging equipment.

After the charging connector has been connected, slowly pull it outward to make sure it cannot be pulled out and is firmly in place.

- ▶ Do not connect the charging connector to the inlet at an angle.
- ► Do not move the charging connector up and down when connecting it.



- Charge Indicator
- 2 Inlet Cap
- Unlock Button

■ When charging is completed

Press the unlock button, and wait without touching the charging connector until you hear the actuation sound of the motor running. After confirming that the actuation sound of the motor has stopped, disengage the charging connector.

► Make sure to close the inlet cap before you close the charge lid.

The charge indicator (blue) stops sweep once charging is completed.

After about 15 seconds, the charge indicator goes off.

Mow to Charge (AC 230 V) Moving to Cha

The charge speed slows down towards the completion of the battery charging.

If you unplug the charging connector from the inlet, charging cancels automatically.

The charging connector can be disengaged when the doors are unlocked.

If the doors are locked, the charging connector cannot be disengaged unless you carry the keyless remote.

If you do not disengage it within 30 seconds of unlocking the doors, the charging connector will automatically relock.

If the charging connector does not disengage, do not disengage it forcefully, and follow the procedures mentioned in the following page.

■ If You Cannot Disengage the Charging Connector P. 547

Continued 445

■ How to Charge (DC)



- Charge Indicator
- 2 Lid Open Button
- Charge Lid Light
- 4 DC Charge Inlet



Charge Lid Release Button

- **1.** Put the transmission into P and turn the power system off.
 - ▶ Make sure the power system is off.
- **2.** Press and hold the lid open button, or press and hold the charge lid release button.
 - ► The charge lid opens.
 - ➤ The charge lid light comes on for a few minutes.
 - ► The charge indicator (white) blinks.

■ How to Charge (DC)

Do not use any charging cables longer than 30 m.

The charge speed slows down towards the completion of the battery charging.

Be sure to follow the instructions and safety precautions provided with the CCS2 DC charger equipment.

Lid open button control:

When the doors are locked

Press lid open button with keyless remote.

When the doors are unlocked

Press lid open button.



- **3.** Press the cap release tab to open the inlet cap. Align and insert the charging connector into the vehicle's inlet until you hear a click.
 - ► The charge indicator (white) stops blinking, and change to blue on when charging starts.

- 1 Charge Indicator
- Release Tab
- Inlet Cap



- 1 Charge Indicator
- Inlet Cap

■ When charging is completed

The charging connector to disengage it from the inlet.

If the charging connector has a release button, press it to release the charging connector from the inlet.

► Make sure to close the inlet cap before you close the charge lid.

The charge indicator (blue) stops sweep once charging is completed.

After about 15 seconds, the charge indicator goes off.

When you want to stop charging, follow the instructions for the use of the charger.

Once the charging is stopped, you can release the charging connector.

If the charging connector does not disengage, do not disengage it forcefully, and follow the procedures mentioned in the following page.

■ If You Cannot Disengage the Charging Connector P. 547

The battery may not charge depending on the charging station outlet.

■ If the Quick Plug-in Charging System Warning Appears P. 538

Continued 447

■ Charge Indicator on the Vehicle Side



Charge Indicator

Shows the High Voltage battery charging status.

Charge indicators status	Explanation
Blinks on the both sides (white)	The charge lid starts to open.
Blinks on the side that the charging connector is plugged in	The charger is ready to charge the battery.Charging is programmed to start using the timer.
Sweep (blue)	The battery is being charged.
Stays on (blue)	Charging is complete.
Blinks (blue)	 The battery has been fully charged and systems such as the battery heating system have been activated. The charge indicator goes off after few seconds.
Blinks (amber)	 There is a problem with the charging system. ▶ Charging does not start. ▶ If the Quick Plug-in Charging System Warning Appears P. 538
Stays on (amber)	 The charging connector not inserted correctly. When connecting the charging cable to the vehicle, insert the connector until it hits the back so that it does not tilt.
Stays on (white)	 The charger's stop button is pressed. Charging is stopped by the charger timer. The charging timer has been set.

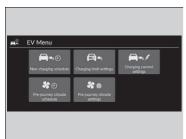
Using a Timer*

You can set the timer for the High Voltage battery charge using the audio/information screen.

The vehicle begins charging except at the scheduled time when the charging connector is connected to the vehicle.

Non-charging Schedule Setting P. 257

Settings on the Audio/Information Screen



⇒ Non-charging schedule

Schedule 1

Schedule 2

- Select EV Menu, then select Noncharging schedule.
 - ➤ The Non-charging schedule can not be set when you do not have the GPS after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Move to an appropriate communication environment and set the schedule again.
- 2. Select Schedule 1 or Schedule 2



The charging wait timer schedule is only applicable to AC 230 V charging.

Even during the time set via **Non-charging schedule** setting, the battery may not be sufficiently charged when any of the following systems are activated.

- Battery Warming System
- Pre air conditioner
- Remote Climate Pre-Conditioning

Settings on the Audio/Information Screen

ON/OFF: Selects whether the schedule is enabled or disabled.

Time Period: The battery will be charged except at the time during you have designated not to start. **Day**: The battery will be charged except at the time

during you have designated not to start.

Location: Select Home or Anywhere.

- ► **Home** may be selected when your vehicle is charged at near your home.
- ▶ Anywhere will be selected when the location of your home is not registered.

If the Home Location is not set in the navigation system, it will default to **Anywhere**.



- **3.** Select **ON** or **OFF**, then select settings for all items in order starting from the top.
- 4. Select Save.

Maximum Charge Setting*

You can use the audio/information screen to change the maximum charge limit of the High Voltage battery when using AC 230 V or DC charging equipment.

≧ Charging Limit Settings P. 258

If the charge station is located up on a hill, you do not need to fully charge the vehicle at the station. This is because additional electrical energy can be stored in the High Voltage battery as the motor acts an electric generator while going down a hill.

Settings on the Audio/Information Screen



- 1. Select EV Menu.
- 2. Select Charging limit settings.



- **3.** Select **Home** or **Away**.
 - You can set the maximum charge setting based on the location of the vehicle when charging.

Home: The location set as home

Away: Any other location

4. Choose your preferred charge amount.

Settings on the Audio/Information Screen

To charge with the charge amount set in **Home**, you need to register the home position with navigation system.

If the Home Location is not set in the navigation system, you can customize **Away** setting only.

Charging Current Settings*

You can use the audio/information screen to change the charging current of the high voltage battery when using AC 230 V charging equipment.

- ➤ You can prevent the breaker from tripping when charging at home or while you are out.
- **► Charging Current Settings** P. 258

Settings on the Audio/Information Screen



- 1. Select EV Menu.
- 2. Select Charging current settings.

Settings on the Audio/Information Screen

The charging current settings is only applicable to AC 230 V charging.

- 3. Select Home or Away.
 - You can set the charge current setting based on where you are charging your vehicle.
- **4.** Choose your preferred charge current.

Audio/Information Screen	Chargi	ng with	Suggested Charging Time*1*2
□ Charging current settings Lower the charging current if required due to any	High	Incase of 10 amp	29 hours (full charge)
charging supply problems. Arvay setting will return to High after a single charge. 1	Between High and Low	Incase of 8 amp	36 hours (full charge)
	Low	Incase of 6 amp	48 hours (full charge)

- *1:Charging time varies depending on conditions, such as the remaining battery level and the ambient temperature.
- *2:Full charge: 0% to 100% charge
- **1** Home: The location set as home
 - ▶ You need to register the home position with navigation system.
- **2** Away: Any other location
- **3 High**: Maximum value (Up to 10 amp)
- 4 Between **High** and **Low**: Intermediate value between maximum value and 6 amp. (For example, if maximum value is 10 amp and minimum value is 6 amp, the Intermediate value would be 8 amp.)
- 6 Low: 6 amp

High Voltage Battery

The High Voltage battery gradually discharges even if the vehicle is not in use. As a result, if your vehicle is parked for an extended period of time, the battery level may get low. Keeping your vehicle's battery level low can shorten the battery life. To maintain the battery while the vehicle is not in use, recharge the battery at least once every three months.

To help extend the lifespan of the battery, it is recommended that you only fully charge the battery just before driving.

The High Voltage battery life can also be affected by temperature. Parking in extremely hot or cold environments can accelerate battery drain.

If the High Voltage battery is too hot or too cold, it will take longer than usual to charge. Also, driving range is reduced when the temperature is low.

The High Voltage battery's output may be limited if its temperature is too high or too low. Output will return to normal once the battery's temperature returns to a normal range. If battery output does not return to normal, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ Battery Warming System

Designed to prevent the temperature of the battery from dropping when outside temperatures drop, thereby maintaining starting and running efficiency.

When outside temperatures are low, the battery warming system will use the power from the charging equipment to maintain the temperature of the battery until the next time the vehicle is driven.

The High Voltage battery drains over time, and under some conditions, drains faster. When the battery life is shortened, this changes the vehicle's driving distance.

≥ Battery Warming System

If the temperature of the High Voltage battery drops to -30°C or below, the power system will not start. Wait for the High Voltage battery to warm up or move the vehicle to a warmer location. Note using the battery heating system will not help in this case. We recommend that you plug in your vehicle when you are parking or storing your vehicle in cold temperatures.

Energy Economy

Improving Energy Economy

Achieving energy economy is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, driving habits, and vehicle condition.

Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated energy economy of this vehicle.

■ Maintenance and Energy Economy

You can optimize your energy economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Always maintain your vehicle in accordance with the messages displayed on the driver information interface.

- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.

Before Performing Maintenance	
Inspection and Maintenance	. 458
Safety When Performing Maintenance	459
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenand	:e
Service	. 460
Maintenance Schedule	46
Maintenance Under the Bonnet	
Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet.	467
Opening the Bonnet	. 468
Motor Room Cover	. 470
Cooling System	. 472
Transmission Fluid	474

Climate Control Coolant	47
Brake Fluid	47
Refilling Window Washer Fluid	47
Replacing Light Bulbs	479
Checking and Maintaining Wipe	r
Blades	482
Checking and Maintaining Tyres	
Checking Tyres	48
Wear Indicators	48
Tyre Service Life	48
Tyre and Wheel Replacement	48
Tyre Rotation	490

2-Volt Battery	491
Remote Transmitter Care	
Replacing the Remote Battery	493
Climate Control System Maintenance	495
Cleaning	
Interior Care	497
Exterior Care	500
Accessories and Modifications	504

Before Performing Maintenance

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Refer to the maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

Maintenance Schedule P. 461

■ Types of Inspection and Maintenance

■ Routine inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when charging.

■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
 - Brake Fluid P. 477
- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
 - **EXECUTE:** Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 487
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
 - Replacing Light Bulbs P. 479
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
 - **☑** Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 482

Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

■ Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the 12-volt battery, all High Voltage system related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
 Heat from the surrounding parts can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the 12-volt battery or compressed air.

Safety When Performing Maintenance

AWARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual.

AWARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

Continued 459

■ Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
 - ► Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the power system is turned off.
- Make sure that the radiator fan is stopped before inspecting the motor compartment.
 - ▶ Depending on the vehicle condition, the radiator fan may operate even when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
 - Make sure to let the power system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
 - ▶ Do not activate the power system unless instructed to do so. Keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.
- Do not touch the high voltage battery and wiring (orange).

Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

The use of Honda Genuine Parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda Genuine Parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

≥ Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

NOTICE

Do not press the motor room cover forcibly. This may damage the motor room cover and component parts.

Maintenance Schedule

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult the service information provided for your vehicle for a more detailed description.

Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

Continued 461

Except New Zealand models

Service at the indicated distance or	km X 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200	220	240
time - whichever comes first.	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120	132	144
Replace transmission fluid		Every 80,000 km or 4 years											
Replace dust and pollen filter		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect front and rear brakes			Every 10,000 km or 1 year										
Replace brake fluid							Ev	ery 3 y	ears/				•
Check expiration date for temporary tyr	e repair kit bottle						E٧	ery 1	year				
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and conce per month)	tate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least ce per month) Every 10,000 km												
Inspect IPU*1		At 240,000 km or 15 years, thereafter every 20,000 km or 2 years					5						
Inspect IPU*2		At 200,000 km or 12 years, thereafter every 20,000 km or 1 year											
	Visually	inspe	ct the	follo	wing	item	s:						
Driveshaft boots													
Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and bo	ots	Every 10,000 km or 1 year											
Suspension components		Lvery 10,000 km or 1 year											
IPU (including IPU guard and cover)*1													
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VS	SA)												l
All fluid levels and condition of fluid		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
IPU (including IPU guard and cover)*2													1

^{*1:}Hong Kong and Macau models *2:Except Hong Kong and Macau models

New Zealand models

Service at the indicated distance or	km X 1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150
time - whichever comes first.	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace transmission fluid		Every 150,000km or 6 years									
Replace dust and pollen filter	Normal		•		•		•		•		•
Replace dust and pollen filter	Severe	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect front and rear brakes	Normal		•		•		•		•		•
inspect nont and real brakes	Severe				Ever	y 7,500) km or	6 mor	iths		
Replace brake fluid		Every 3 years									
Check expiration date for temporary tyre	repair kit bottle					Eve	ry 1 ye	ar			
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and corper month)	ndition at least once	Every 15,000 km									
Check lights alignment		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Test drive (noise, stability, dashboard oper	ation)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect IPU		At 200,000 km or 12 years, thereafter every 15,000 km or 1 year									
	Visually insp	ect the	e follov	wing i	tems:						
Driveshaft boots	Normal	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boo Suspension components	ts Severe	evere Every 7,500 km or 6 months									
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA	A)										
All fluid levels and condition of fluid		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
IPU (including IPU guard and cover)											

Severe Conditions*

Follow the Severe Conditions Maintenance Schedule if you drive your car MAINLY under one or more of the following conditions:

- Driving less than 8 km per trip or, in freezing temperatures, driving less than 16 km per trip.
- Driving in extremely hot, over 35°C condition.
- Extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go driving.
- Driving with a loaded car-top carrier or driving in mountainous conditions.
- Driving on muddy, dusty, or de-iced roads.

NOTE: If you only OCCASIONALLY drive under "severe" conditions, you should follow the Normal Conditions Maintenance Schedule.

Maintenance Record

Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

Except New Zealand models

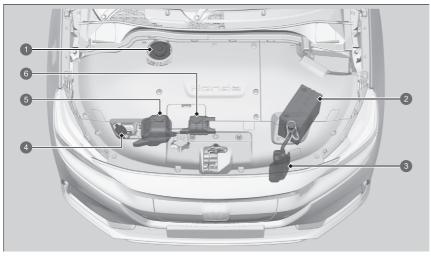
	Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
20,000 km (or 12 Mo.)			
40,000 km (or 24 Mo.)			
60,000 km (or 36 Mo.)			
80,000 km (or 48 Mo.)			
100,000 km (or 60 Mo.)			
120,000 km (or 72 Mo.)			
140,000 km (or 84 Mo.)			
160,000 km (or 96 Mo.)			
180,000 km (or 108 Mo.)			
200,000 km (or 120 Mo.)			
220,000 km (or 132 Mo.)			
240,000 km (or 144 Mo.)			

New Zealand models

	Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
15,000 km (or 12 Mo.)			
30,000 km (or 24 Mo.)			
45,000 km (or 36 Mo.)			
60,000 km (or 48 Mo.)			
75,000 km (or 60 Mo.)			
90,000 km (or 72 Mo.)			
105,000 km (or 84 Mo.)			
120,000 km (or 96 Mo.)			
135,000 km (or 108 Mo.)			
150,000 km (or 120 Mo.)			

Maintenance Under the Bonnet

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet



- Brake Fluid (Black Cap)
- 2 12-Volt Battery
- 3 PCU Coolant Reserve Tank

- Washer Fluid (Blue Cap)
- **5** IPU Coolant Reserve Tank
- **6** Climate Control Coolant Reserve Tank

Opening the Bonnet



- **1.** Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
- Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
 - ► The bonnet will pop up slightly.

- Bonnet Release Handle
- 2 Pull



3. Push the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) to the side and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.

○ Opening the Bonnet

NOTICE

Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised. The bonnet will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the bonnet and/or the wipers.

NOTICE

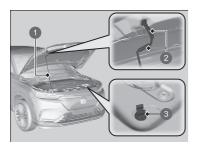
Do not press the motor room cover forcibly. This may damage the motor room cover and component parts.

When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.

If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

The radiator fans and the climate control system will not operate when the bonnet is open and the climate control system is turned on with the remote transmitter.

Lever



4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the bonnet.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the bonnet. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 30 cm and let the bonnet close.

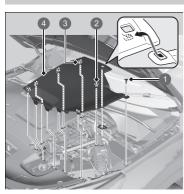
- Support Rod
- 2 Grip
- Clamp

Motor Room Cover

The component parts in the motor room are protected by a cover.

You may need to remove the cover when you perform certain maintenance work.

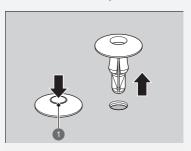
■ Remove the Left Side Cover



- 1. Remove the holding clip.
- 2. Pull up the motor room cover.

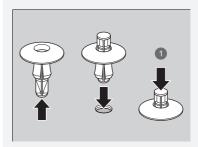
Motor Room Cover

Press down the centre pin until it clicks to unlock it.



1 Centre Pin

Push the centre pin back to lock the clip. Then, insert the clip into the hole and press on the centre pin until it is flat.



1 Push until the pin is flat.

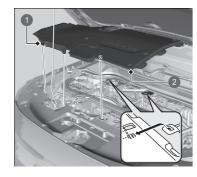
- 1 Clip
- 2 Pin
- Tab
- Motor Room Cover

■ Remove the Right Side Cover



- 1. Remove the motor room cover (left side). ▶ Remove the Left Side Cover P. 470
- **2.** Remove the holding clips.

Clip



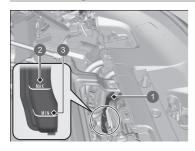
3. Pull up the motor room cover.

- 1 Tab
- 2 Motor Room Cover

Cooling System

Coolant is used to reduce the temperature of the high voltage battery, power control unit and related parts. When checking the coolant level, make sure to follow the procedures listed below. If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

■ Checking the PCU Coolant Level



- **1.** Remove the both motor room covers.
 - Motor Room Cover P. 470
- 2. Check the fluid level in the tank.
- **3.** If the coolant level has dropped below the **MIN** level, have your vehicle serviced at a dealer.
 - ➤ Only a properly trained technician can refill the coolant and check the system for leaks

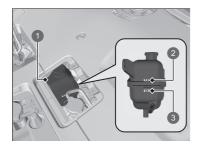
- Reserve Tank
- MAX
- MIN

■ Checking the IPU Coolant Level



1. Remove the cover.

Cover



- **2.** Check the fluid level in the tank.
- **3.** If the coolant level has dropped below the **MIN** level, have your vehicle serviced at a dealer.
 - ➤ Only a properly trained technician can refill the coolant and check the system for leaks.

- Reserve Tank
- MAX
- MIN

Transmission Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda BEVF-Type1

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary. Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change transmission fluid.

► Maintenance Schedule P. 461

Do not attempt to check or change the transmission fluid by yourself.

>> Transmission Fluid

NOTICE

Do not mix Honda BEVF-Type1 with other transmission fluids.

Using a transmission fluid other than Honda BEVF-Type1 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.

Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda BEVF-Type1 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

Climate Control Coolant

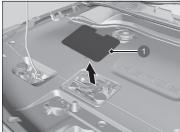
Specified coolant: Honda Genuine Coolant

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the coolant level every time you charge the High Voltage battery. Check the reserve tank. Add the climate control coolant accordingly.

1. Remove the cover

Checking the Coolant



Cover

Climate Control Coolant

AWARNING

Removing the reserve tank cap while the climate control system is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

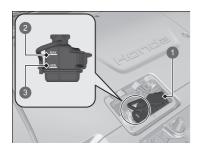
Always let the climate control system cool down before removing the reserve tank cap.

If Honda genuine coolant is not available, you may use another major brand non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended

Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda genuine coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's coolant system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the climate control system.

Continued 475

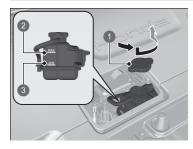


- Reserve Tank
- MAX
- MIN

2. Make sure the climate control system is cool.

- **3.** Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank
 - ► If the coolant level is below the MIN mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the MAX mark.
- 4. Inspect the system for leaks.

Adding the Coolant



- Reserve Tank Cap
- MAX
- MIN

Make sure the climate control system is cool.

- **2.** Turn the reserve tank cap 1/8th turn anticlockwise and relieve any pressure in the reserve tank.
- **3.** Push down and turn the reserve tank cap anticlockwise to remove it.
- **4.** Pour coolant into the reserve tank until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
- **5.** Put the reserve tank cap back on, and tighten it fully.

■ Adding the Coolant

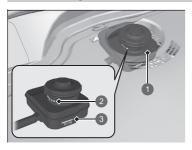
NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the motor compartment.

Brake Fluid

Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

■ Checking the Brake Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

- Reserve Tank
- MAX
- MIN

Brake Fluid

NOTICE

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

We recommend using a genuine product.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid



Check the amount of window washer fluid by looking at the reservoir.

If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

■ Refilling Window Washer Fluid

NOTICE

Do not use motor antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump.

Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid.

Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale buildup.

Replacing Light Bulbs

Headlights

Headlights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Front Fog Lights

Front fog lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Position/Daytime Running Lights

Position/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Front Turn Signal Lights

Front turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights

Door mirror side turn lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Brake Lights, Taillights, and Rear Turn Signal Lights

Brake lights, taillights, and rear turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

Taillights, Rear Fog Light*, and Back-Up Lights

Taillights, rear fog light*, and back-up lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Rear Licence Plate Light

Rear licence plate light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

High-Mount Brake Light

High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Charge Lights

Charge lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.



Charge Lights

Charge Lid Light

Charge lid light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.



1 Charge Lid Light

Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades

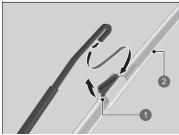
Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and become noisy, and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Lift the driver side wiper arm first, then the passenger side.



2. Press up on and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.

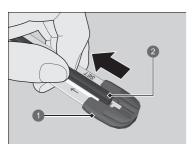
○ Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber

NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windscreen, as it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windscreen.

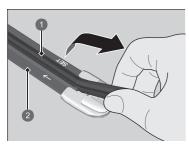


2 Holder



3. Pull the end of the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow in the image until it is out of the holder's end cap.

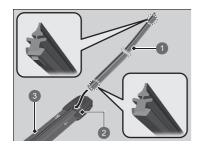
- 1 End Cap at the bottom
- 2 Blade



4. Pull the wiper blade in the opposite direction to slide it out of the holder.

- Blade
- 2 Holder

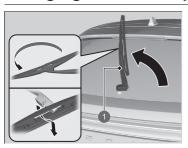
Continued 483



- Blade
- 2 Cap
- Holder

- **5.** Insert the flat side of the new wiper blade onto the bottom part of the holder. Insert the blade all the way.
- **6.** Install the end of the wiper blade into the cap.
- **7.** Slide the holder onto the wiper arm until it locks.
- **8.** Lower the passenger side wiper arm first, then the driver side.

Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber



- 1. Raise the wiper arm off.
- **2.** Pivot the bottom end of the wiper blade up until it comes off from the wiper arm.

NOTICE

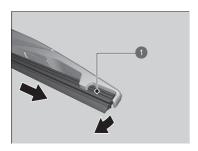
Do not try to forcefully lift up the wiper arm.

The wiper arm may be damaged if it is lifted too high.

NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm, as it may damage the rear window.

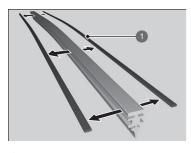
Wiper Arm



Blade

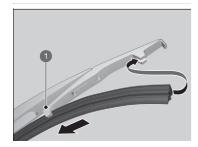
3. Slide the blade out of the wiper.

Continued 485



4. Remove the retainers from wiper blade and mount to a new rubber blade.

Retainer



Holder

- **5.** Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder.
 - Make sure it is engaged correctly, then install the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm.

Checking and Maintaining Tyres

Checking Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and energy economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10–20 kPa (0.1–0.2 bar, 1–2 psi) per month.

■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems. Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.

Wear Indicators P. 488

• Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

○ Checking Tyres

AWARNING

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km. If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

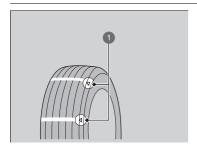
If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30–40 kPa (0.3–0.4 bar, 4–6 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the deflation warning system.

Deflation Warning System Calibration P. 338

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced

Wear Indicators



Example of a Wear Indicator mark

The groove where the wear indicator is located is about 1.6 mm shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre. Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.

Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

∑Tyre and Wheel Replacement

AWARNING

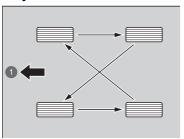
Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

Tyre Rotation

Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

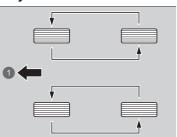
■ Tyres without rotation marks



Rotate the tyres as shown here.

Front

■ Tyres with rotation marks

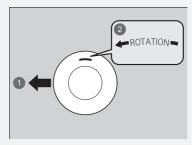


1 Front

Rotate the tyres as shown here.

∑Tyre Rotation

Tyres with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



- Front
- 2 Rotation Mark

When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

Whenever tyres are rotated, you must calibrate the deflation warning system.

Deflation Warning System CalibrationP. 338

12-Volt Battery

Checking the 12-Volt Battery

The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the driver information interface will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.



To access the battery terminals:

- **1.** Remove the motor room cover (left side).
 - Motor Room Cover P. 470

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

Hong Kong and Macau models

- The immobilizer system needs to be reset.
 - **Immobilizer System Indicator** P. 107

All models

- The vehicle cannot be charged. After reconnecting the battery, turn the power system on, then turn it off.
 - Confirm that charging is possible.
 - Turning on the Power P. 315
 - **≥ Charging** P. 438

≥ 12-Volt Battery

AWARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any battery maintenance.

AWARNING

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN

Charging the 12-Volt Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (-) cable first, and reconnect it last.

If the battery cable is removed while a system update is being performed, the electrical system can be permanently damaged. Only remove the battery cable when a system update is not being performed.

≥ 12-Volt Battery

Emergency Procedures

Eyes: Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately. Skin: Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.

Swallowing: Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications.

Consult a dealer for more information

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), safety support, Road Departure Mitigation, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Remote Transmitter Care

Replacing the Remote Battery

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.



Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the built-in key.



- **2.** With the buttons facing down, remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the slot with the key grip.
 - ➤ Wrap the key grip with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.

■ Replacing the Remote Battery

A A WARNING

CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD

The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed. Keep new and used batteries away from children.

If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

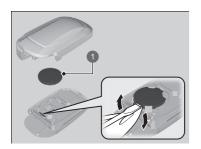
CAUTION: Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.

CAUTION: Do not exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like, that can result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas during use, storage or transportation.

CAUTION: Do not dispose of a battery into fire or a hot oven, or give mechanically crushing or cutting of a battery, that can result in an explosion.

CAUTION: Do not subjected to extremely low air pressure at high altitude that may result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas.

Continued 493



Battery

- **3.** Remove the battery by prying on the edge with flat-tip screwdriver. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.
 - ➤ Wrap a flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.

■ Replacing the Remote Battery

A warning mark is located adjacent to the button battery $\!\!\!\!\!\!^*.$

NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

Climate Control System Maintenance

Dust and Pollen Filter

When to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

Maintenance Schedule P. 461

■ How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter



1. Open the glove box.

- 1 Pull
- 2 Handle

Dust and Pollen Filter

If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced.

The dust and pollen filter collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air.

If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.

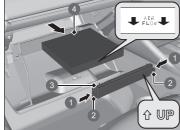
Continued 495



- **2.** Push the stopper on the passenger's side of the glove box to detach it from the glove box.
- **3.** Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.
- **4.** Pivot the glove box out of the way.

case cover, and remove it.

- Stopper
- 2 Tab



- 6. Remove the filter from the case.7. Install a new filter in the case.
 - ► Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

5. Push in the tabs on the corners of the filter

- 1 Push
- 2 Tab
- Cover
- 4 Dust and Pollen Filter

Cleaning

Interior Care

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.

Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt. Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts. Let the belts air dry. Wipe the loops of the seat belt anchorages using a clean cloth.



1 Loop

■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle. Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone-based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches. Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.

If a silicone-based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discolouration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles. Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.

Do not place used cloths on top of resin-based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Be careful not to spill a liquid type air freshener.

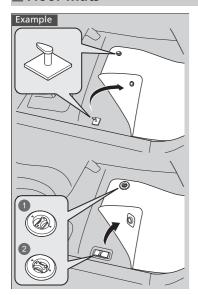
○ Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of the electrical components around the rearview mirror.

Continued 497

■ Floor Mats



The driver's floor mat hooks over floor anchorages, which keep the mat from sliding forward.

Do not put any additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.

≫Floor Mats

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchorages. Position any rear seat floor mats properly. If not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

1 Unlock

2 Lock

■ Charging Cable Plug and Charging Connector

When the charging cable plug and charging connector gets dirty, wipe the dirt with a soft cloth.

■ Maintaining Genuine Leather

To properly clean leather:

- **1.** Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
- 2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
- **3.** Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
- **4.** Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

Maintaining Genuine Leather

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather, resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark coloured clothing can rub onto the leather seats, resulting in discolouration or stains.

Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive. Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

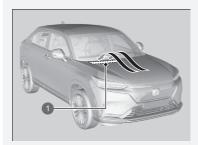
- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap is stuck to painted surfaces.

Using an Automated Car Wash

- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.
- For models equipped with automatic intermittent wipers, turn the wipers off.

≥ Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



Air Intake Vents

If water and any chemicals are on the brakes when your vehicle is being washed, drive a short distance and apply the brakes several times before parking. Parking while brakes are wet may cause them to be stuck by rust.

≥Using an Automated Car Wash

When using an automated car wash that pulls the vehicle through with a conveyor, make sure the transmission in \boxed{N} position.

If you want to keep the transmission in N position (car wash mode) P. 324

Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray water under the bonnet where the electric motor and other high voltage system components are located. It could cause a malfunction.
- Do not spray water directly at the charging port.
- Do not spray water directly onto the camera or the area around it. Water may
 enter the lens and cause the camera to malfunction.

Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps to protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin-Coated Parts

If you get coolant or battery fluid on resin-coated parts, they may stain or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin-Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

Maintaining Aluminium Wheels

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminium alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their lustre or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.

Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.

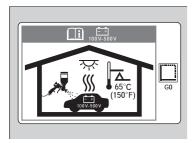
However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Hydrophilic Mirror*

Your vehicle's door mirror surface is coated with hydrophilic film. Follow the next steps when the mirrors become less hydrophilic.

- 1. Rinse the door mirrors with water and remove dirt.
- 2. Wipe the mirrors with a clean damp cloth.
 - ▶ If you cannot remove dirt, use the genuine window cleaner, or neutral household detergent, and rinse with enough water.
- **3.** Expose the mirrors to the sun for five to nine hours.

■ Painting the Vehicle



High temperature may damage the high voltage battery used to power the electric motor.

When painting the vehicle in a heated paint booth, make sure the temperature does not exceed 65°C.

>> Hydrophilic Mirror*

NOTICE

To keep the hydrophilicity of the mirrors,

- Do not apply wax or water repellent agent on the mirror surface
- Do not wipe the mirrors with a gritty cloth or abrasive cleanser.

* Not available on all models

Accessories and Modifications

Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windscreen. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any items other than Honda Genuine Accessories designated for your vehicle over areas marked SRS AIRBAG, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows. Items other than Honda Genuine Accessories designated for your vehicle installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.

▶ Fuses P. 540

 Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

AWARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

AWARNING

Use of improperly designed, engineered or manufactured high voltage battery assemblies could cause a fire in your vehicle.

A vehicle fire could result in a crash or injury.

Only use a genuine Honda high voltage battery assembly, or its equivalent, in your vehicle.

Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair your vehicle's high voltage power system or otherwise modify vehicle electrical systems. Disassembling or modifying electrical equipment can result in a crash or a fire.

If you ever need to replace your vehicle's high voltage battery assembly outside of warranty coverage, we highly recommend that you only use a genuine Honda high voltage battery assembly. Genuine Honda high voltage battery assemblies are designed to work with your vehicle's power system and have been designed, engineered, and manufactured to avoid overcharging situations. Non-genuine high voltage battery assemblies may not have been similarly designed, engineered, and manufactured, and installation of such assemblies could result in overcharging, fires, loss of power, or other conditions that may increase the likelihood of a crash or injury.

■ Accessories and Modifications

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, twoway radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Honda Genuine Accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

Some Honda Genuine Accessories are supplied with an exclusive owner's manual for the operation and care detail of the product. If an accessory owner's manual is provided to you, please refer to it for full detail.

If any Honda Genuine Accessories become inoperable, refer to the separate accessory owner's manual (if applicable) or consult a dealer for assistance to troubleshoot the potential faulty condition.

Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

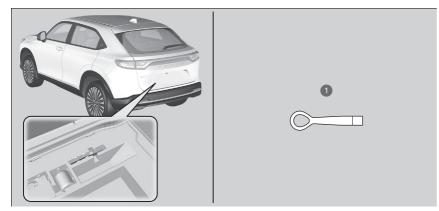
Tools	. 508
If a Tyre Goes Flat	509
Handling of the Jack	522
Power System Won't Start	
Checking the Procedure	523
If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak	.525
Emergency Power System On	526
Emergency Power System Off	527
If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead	528
Overheating	531
Indicator Coming On/Blinking	
If the 12-Volt Battery Charging Syste	m
Indicator Comes On	532

If the Reduced stopping power Warning Appears532
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes
On or Blinks 533
If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System
Indicator Comes On 534
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On
or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake
System Indicator (Amber) Comes On 535
If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning
System Indicator Comes On or Blinks 536
If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks
along with the Warning Message 537

If the Quick Plug-in Charging System	
Warning Appears	538
If the Propulsion Battery Thermal Run	awa
Warning Appears	539
uses	
Fuse Locations	540
Inspecting and Changing Fuses	544
mergency Towing	545
f You Cannot Open the Charge Lid	546
f You Cannot Disengage the Charg	ing
Connector	547
f You Cannot Open the Tailgate	549

Tools

Types of Tools



Detachable Towing Hook

■Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the luggage area.

If a Tyre Goes Flat

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

If the tyre has a large cut or is otherwise severely damaged, you will need to have the vehicle towed. If the tyre only has a small puncture, from a nail for instance, you can use the temporary tyre repair kit so that you can drive to the nearest service station for a more permanent repair.

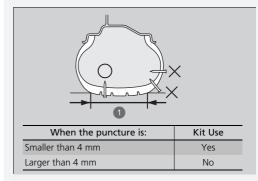
If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place.

- **1.** Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
- **2.** Put the transmission into **P**.
- **3.** Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

▼Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre Tyre

The kit should not be used in the following situations. Instead, contact a dealer or a roadside assistance to have the vehicle towed.

- The tyre sealant has expired.
- More than one tyre is punctured.
- The puncture or cut is larger than 4 mm.
- The tyre side wall is damaged or the puncture is outside the contact area.

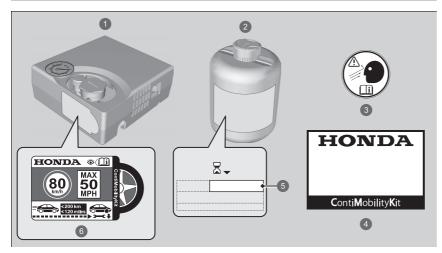


Contact Area

- Damage has been caused by driving with the tyres extremely under inflated.
- The tyre bead is no longer seated.
- The rim is damaged.

Do not remove a nail or screw that punctured the tyre. If you remove it from the tyre, you may not be able to repair the puncture using the kit.

■ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

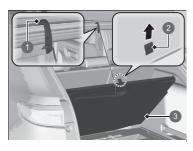


- Air Compressor
- 2 Sealant Bottle
- Wheel Label
- 4 Handling Manual
- **5** Expiration Date
- **6** Speed Restriction Label

■ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

Speed restriction label are applied to the side of the temporary tyre repair kit.

When making a temporary repair, carefully read the instruction manual provided with the kit.



- **1.** Open the tailgate.
- **2.** Pull the strap and open the luggage area floor lid.
- **3.** Take out the hook, and hang it onto the tailgate opening.

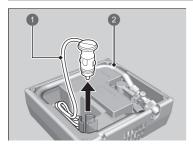
- Hook
- 2 Strap
- S Floor Lid



1 Tyre Repair Kit

- **4.** Take the kit out of the tool box.
- **5.** Place the kit face up on flat ground near the flat tyre away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side

■ Injecting Sealant and Air



1. Take the air compressor hose and plug cord out of the back of the air compressor.

- Plug Cord
- 2 Air Compressor Hose



2. Remove the cap from the air compressor.

∑Injecting Sealant and Air

AWARNING

Tyre sealant contains substances that are harmful and can be fatal if swallowed.

If accidentally swallowed, do not induce vomiting. Drink plenty of water and get medical attention immediately.

For skin or eye contact, flush with cool water and get medical attention if necessary.

Keep the sealant bottle out of the reach of children.

In cold temperatures, the sealant may not flow easily. In this situation, warm it up for five minutes before using.

The sealant is latex based and can permanently stain clothing and other materials. Be careful during handling and wipe up any spills immediately.



3. Shake the bottle well.



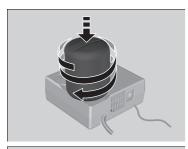
- **4.** Remove the bottle cap.
 - ▶ Do not remove the sealed cover.

Do not remove the empty bottle after injecting the sealant.

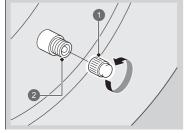
See a Honda dealer for a replacement of sealant bottle and proper disposal of the empty bottle.



2 Not Removed

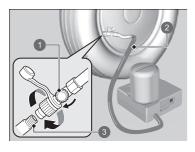


- **5.** Screw the sealed bottle onto the air compressor.
 - Screw the bottle tightly so that it does not become loose.

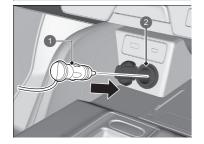


6. Unscrew the valve cap.

- Valve Cap
- 2 Valve



- Air Valve
- 2 Air Compressor Hose
- Valve



- Plug
- 2 Accessory Power Socket

- **7.** Screw the air compressor hose onto the tyre valve.
 - ► Make sure the air valve is closed and the air compressor is turned off.

- **8.** Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
 - ▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
 - **Accessory Power Socket** P. 192
- **9.** Turn on the vehicle's power system.

∑Injecting Sealant and Air

Turn the air compressor off when connecting the air compressor hose.

You hear a motor sound coming from the activated air compressor. This is normal.

If the specified air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tyre may be too severely damaged for the kit to provide the necessary seal and your vehicle will need to be towed.

If you want to measure the air pressure using a gauge, turn the air compressor off first.



- Air Valve
- Switch
- OFF
- 4 ON

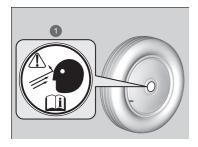
- **10.** Turn the air compressor on and inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
 - ➤ The compressor starts injecting sealant and air into the tyre.
 - Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.
- **11.** After the air pressure reaches the specified pressure, turn off the compressor.
 - Check the air pressure gauge on the air compressor.
 - ► If overinflated, release the air by turning the air valve. Be careful not to spill any sealant.
- **12.** Unplug the plug from the accessory power socket.
- **13.** Unscrew the air compressor hose from the tyre valve. Install the hose cap.
 - ► Be careful not to spill any sealant when the hose is disconnected. Wipe away any spills.

■ Injecting Sealant and Air

Inform the use of tyre sealant when you ask a Honda dealer or the road assistant service for replacing or repairing the flat tyre.

This air compressor is designed for the automotive tyre. Check the following:

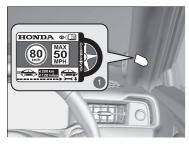
- The power supply of the air compressor is limited to your vehicle's 12-volt DC accessory power socket.
- Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.
 - Make it cool down when using the compressor continuously.



Wheel Label

- **14.** Apply the wheel label to the flat surface of the wheel.
 - ► The wheel surface must be clean to ensure the label adheres properly.
- **15.** Store the tyre repair kit in the luggage area.
 - ▶ Do not remove the sealant bottle from the air compressor.

Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre



Speed Restriction Label

- **1.** Apply the speed restriction label to the location as shown.
- **2.** Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes or 3 to 10 kilometres.
 - ▶ Do not exceed 80 km/h.
- **3.** Stop the vehicle in a safe place.

>Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.



- Air Compressor
- OFF
- ON

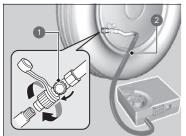
- **4.** Recheck the air pressure using the gauge on the air compressor.
 - ▶ Do not turn the air compressor on to check the pressure.
- **5.** If the air pressure is
 - Less than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi): Do not add air or continue driving. The leak is too severe. Call for help and have your vehicle towed.
 - **Emergency Towing** P. 545
 - Specified air pressure (See the label on driver's doorjamb.) or more: Continue driving until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h.
 - Greater than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi), but less than specified air pressure (See the label on driver's doorjamb.): Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
 - Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre
 P. 520

And repeat steps 2 to 4 until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h.

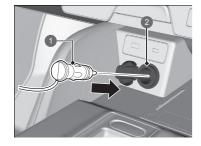
- ➤ The distance to the nearest service station has to be within about 200 kilometres.
- 6. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

■ Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

You can use the kit to inflate a non-punctured under-inflated tyre.

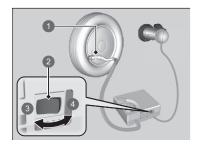


- Air Valve
- 2 Hose



- Plug
- 2 Accessory Power Socket

- **1.** Take the air compressor out of the luggage area.
 - Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre P. 510
- **2.** Place the kit face up on flat ground near the tyre to be inflated, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.
- **3.** Remove the valve cap.
- **4.** Attach the hose onto the tyre valve. Screw it until it is tight.
 - ► Make sure the air valve is closed.
- **5.** Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
 - ▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
 - **≥** Accessory Power Socket P. 192
- **6.** Turn on the vehicle's power system.



- Air Valve
- 2 Switch
- OFF
- 4 ON

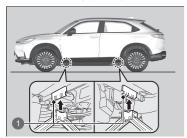
- **7.** Turn the air compressor switch on to inflate the tyre.
 - ► The compressor starts to inject air into the tyre.
 - If you have started the power system, leave it running while injecting air.
- **8.** Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
- **9.** Turn off the air compressor.
 - ► Check the pressure gauge on the air compressor.
 - If overinflated, turn the air valve to deflate.
- **10.** Turn the vehicle's power system off, then unplug the air compressor from the accessory power socket.
- **11.** Unscrew the air compressor hose from the tyre valve. Reinstall the valve cap.
- **12.** Store the air compressor in the luggage area.

NOTICE

Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Handling of the Jack

Your vehicle has jacking points as shown. When replacing your tyres, consult a dealer.



Jacking Points

Power System Won't Start

Checking the Procedure

If the power system won't start, check the following items and take appropriate action.

Checklist	Condition	What to Do
Check if the related indicator or driver	The Remove charging connector appears.	Removing a charge connector. Set the power mode to ACCESSORY, then to ON.
information interface messages come on.	The Low charge. Power reduced. appears.	Charge the High Voltage battery. ► Charging P. 438
	The Temperature too low for vehicle to operate appears.	 You must wait for an increase in the ambient temperature or move the vehicle to a warmer location. Contact a dealer if necessary.
	The To start, touch start button with emblem side of remote appears.	☑ If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak P. 525
	The transmission system indicator blinks and the Transmission system problem. Apply parking brake when parked. appears.	■ If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message P. 537
Check the fuses.		Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		≥ Inspecting and Changing Fuses P. 544
Check the power system		Follow the instructions, and try to start the power
starting procedure.		system again.
		Turning on the Power P. 315
Check the shift position.	The transmission is not in $\boxed{\mathbf{P}}$.	Change the shift position to $\boxed{\mathbf{P}}$.
Check the immobilizer system indicator.	When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the power system cannot be turned on.	▶ Immobilizer System P. 145▶ Immobilizer System Indicator P. 107

If you cannot turn on the power system after checking all the items in the list above, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.

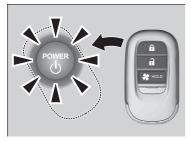
If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead P. 528

Depending on the situation, it may be possible to temporarily turn the power system on using the emergency starting procedure.

Emergency Power System On P. 526

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds, the **To start, touch start button with emblem side of remote** appears on the driver information interface, the **POWER** button flashes, and the (Ready) indicator does not come on, turn on the power system as follows:





- 1. Press the **POWER** button
 - ➤ The beeper sounds and the **POWER** button flashes for about 30 seconds.
- 2. Touch the centre of the **POWER** button with the **H** logo on the keyless remote while the **POWER** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote should be facing you.
 - ► The beeper sounds, and the **POWER** button stays on for about 10 seconds.
- Depress the brake pedal and press the POWER button while the POWER button is on.
 - ► The (Ready) indicator comes on.
 - ► If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

Emergency Power System On

If the power system cannot be turned on using the normal starting procedure, you may be able to turn it on using the emergency starting procedure below.

Do not use this procedure if it is not an emergency.

- 1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
- **2.** Check that the transmission is in $\boxed{\mathsf{P}}$, then set the power mode to ACCESSORY.
- **3.** Firmly depress the brake pedal, then press and hold the **POWER** button for at least 15 seconds.

This should be considered a system malfunction even if you are able to turn the power system on using the above procedure.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

Emergency Power System Off

The **POWER** button may be used to turn the power system off due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must turn the power system off, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **POWER** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **POWER** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock. However, because turning off the power system disables the power assist the power system provides to the steering and braking systems, it will require significantly more physical effort and time to steer and slow the vehicle. Use both feet on the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle and stop immediately in a safe place.

The transmission automatically changes to $\boxed{\textbf{P}}$ after the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Then, the power mode changes to VEHICLE OFF.

NOTICE

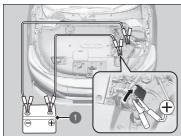
Do not press the **POWER** button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the power system to be turned off.

If you press the **POWER** button while driving, the beeper sounds.

If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead

Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the power system, then open the bonnet.



Booster Battery

- 1. Remove the motor room cover.

 ▶ Motor Room Cover P. 470
- **2.** Open the terminal cover on your vehicle's 12-volt battery positive \oplus terminal.
- **3.** Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's 12-volt battery ① terminal.
- **4.** Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery \oplus terminal.
 - ► Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
 - ► When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.
- **5.** Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery \bigcirc terminal.

AWARNING

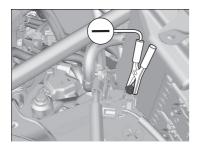
A 12-volt battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the 12-volt battery.

NOTICE

If a 12-volt battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen 12-volt battery can cause it to rupture.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the power system vibrates. Be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.



- **6.** Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the nut of the 12-volt battery sensor terminal as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
- **7.** If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its RPM slightly.
- Attempt to start your vehicle's power system. If it isn't turn on, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

checked by a dealer.

12-volt battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the power system from starting.

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), safety support, Road Departure Mitigation, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting a 12-volt battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each

indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle

■ What to Do After the Power System is Turned On

Once your vehicle's power system has been turned on, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

- **2.** Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery \bigcirc terminal.
- **3.** Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's 12-volt battery \oplus terminal.
- **4.** Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery \oplus terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

Overheating

How to Handle Overheating

■ The Power system temperature high. Power may be reduced. Message Appears on the Driver Information Interface

The **Power system temperature high. Power may be reduced.** appears on the driver information interface when the power system temperature is high. Keep the power mode in ON, and wait until the message disappears.

▶ If the message does not disappear, have your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

∑How to Handle Overheating

If the **Power system temperature high. Power may be reduced.** appears on the driver information interface, your vehicle has less ability to accelerate and may be harder to start on an incline.

Indicator Coming On/Blinking

If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On



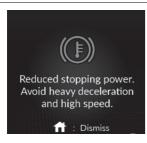
■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Stop in a safe place and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Reduced stopping power Warning Appears



- Reasons for the warning to appear Appears when braking ability is reduced.
- What to do as soon as the warning appears

Slow down and drive carefully. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

≥ If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the power system. Restarting the power system may rapidly discharge the battery.

The power system uses the 12-volt battery to activate. You may not be able to turn the power system on again if you have turned it off with this indicator on.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks



(Red)

■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on while driving

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. Pull the deceleration paddle selector several times to help slow the vehicle using regenerative braking.

■ Reasons for the indicator to blink

There is a problem with the electric parking brake system.

■ What to do when the indicator blinks

Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

≥ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

Have your vehicle repaired immediately. It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary, pull the deceleration paddle selector to help slow the vehicle using regenerative braking.

If the brake system indicator (red) and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work.

Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

☑ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On P. 535

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when there is a problem with the EPS system.

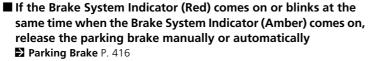
■ What to do when the indicator comes on

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn on the power system again. If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.
- If **Do not drive** displays on the driver information interface, immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On



(Red)





- If the Brake System Indicator (Red) continuously comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by a dealer immediately.
 - ▶ To prevent the vehicle from moving, put the transmission into P.
- If only the Brake System Indicator (Red) is turned off, avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On

If you apply the parking brake, you may not be able to release it.

If the brake system indicator (red) and the brake system indicator (amber) come on at the same time, the parking brake is working.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work because it is checking the system.

If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the deflation warning system has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the deflation warning system, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

- ➤ Calibrate the deflation warning system after the tyre pressure is adjusted.
 - **Deflation Warning System Calibration** P. 338
- What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible.

■If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message





- Reasons for the indicator to blink The transmission is malfunctioning.
- What to do when the indicator blinks Immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message

You may not be able to turn on the power system.

Make sure to set the parking brake when parking your vehicle.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

Emergency Towing P. 545

If the Quick Plug-in Charging System Warning Appears



■ Reasons for the warning to appear Appears when there is a problem with the quick plug-in charging system or the charging station outlet.

■ What to do when the warning appears

There may be a problem with the charging station outlet. Refer to the instructions provided at the station or consult a qualified technician.

If the outlet works properly, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If the Propulsion Battery Thermal Runaway Warning Appears



While driving



While stopped (shift position can be changed to P)



While stopped (shift position cannot be changed to P)

■ Reasons for the warning to appear

- Appears when thermal runaway may be occurring in the high voltage battery.
- Immediately stop in a safe place and apply the parking brake.
- What to do after parking the vehicle Immediately move away from the vehicle and contact a dealer.

≥ If the Propulsion Battery Thermal Runaway Warning Appears

AWARNING

Do not approach the vehicle since it may emit harmful fumes. Even if the vehicle stops producing fumes, it may start again after some time.

Fuses

Fuse Locations

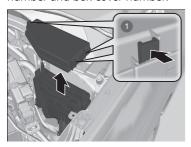
If any electrical devices are not working, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

■ Fuse Boxes inside the Bonnet

■ Fuse box A

Located near the 12-volt battery. Push the tabs to open the box.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.



1 Tabs

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1	P	Wiper	30 A
2	<u> </u>	Left Light Control Module	15 A
3	*	SRS	10 A
4		Hazard	7.5 A
5	<u>l</u> i	VBU	7.5 A
6	<u>l</u> i	Audio	30 A
7	<u>l</u> i	Back Up	15 A
8	l	MCU	20 A
9	<u>i</u>	IGB	10 A
10	\prod i	QC Relay	10 A
11	Πi	ABS/VSA Motor	40 A
12	*	Main Fan	30 A
13	Πi	EV IGP	20 A
14	(1)	Stop	10 A
15	-	-	-
16	<u>∏i</u>	Right Light Control Module	15 A
17	\Leftrightarrow	Washer	15 A
18	b	Horn	10 A
19	<u>l</u> i	OBC	7.5 A
20	Πi	SBW	10 A
21	Πi	EWP (DU)	10 A
22	Πi	A/C	10 A
23	*	Sub Fan	30 A
24	Πi	ABS/VSA FSR	40 A

		Circuit Protected	Amps
25	<u>l</u> i	IGP Relay COIL+ (1)	7.5 A
26	<u>l</u> i	IGP Relay COIL+ (2)	7.5 A
27	-	-	-
28	<u>l</u> i	MCU 1	7.5 A
29	<u>l</u> i	MCU 2	7.5 A
30	<u>l</u> i	MCU 3	7.5 A
31	<u>l</u> i	IGP VCU	15 A
32	Πi	ES VLV	7.5 A
33	<u>l</u> i	Battery PTC	7.5 A

■ Fuse box B

Located near the \oplus terminal of the 12-volt battery under the motor room cover. Have a dealer inspect and replace the fuse.

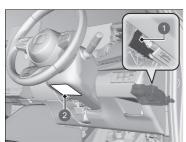


1 Fuse Box B

	Circuit Protected	Amps
a - +	MAIN	170 A
b 🔟	RB MAIN 1	60 A
c 🔝	RB MAIN 2	80 A
d 🔟	DCD	70 A
e 📀	EPS	70 A
f <u>[i</u>	ESB	40 A

■ Driver Side Interior Fuse Boxes

Located under the dashboard.



- 1 Fuse Box
- 2 Fuse Label

Fuse locations are shown on the label under the steering column.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

		C: '. D l	
		Circuit Protected	Amps
1	l	Accessory	7.5 A
2	l	ACC Key Lock	7.5 A
3	<u>l</u> i	Blind spot information System*	(10 A)
4	l	IDAS Camera	7.5 A
5	<u>l</u> i	OPTION	10 A
6	Πi	SRS 2*	(10 A)
7	(<u>a</u>)	Meter	10 A
8	\Box i	ESL	10 A
9	<u>l</u> i	A/C	10 A
10	_	-	-
11	(i	Wiper Relay	7.5 A
12		Right Side Door Lock	10 A
13		Left Side Door Unlock	10 A
14	RR L	Left Rear Power Window	20 A
15	AS	Passenger's Power Window	20 A
16		Door Lock	20 A
17	_	_	-
18	<u>l</u> i	USB Charger	10 A
19	<u>l</u> i	Super Locking*	(20 A)
20	<u>l</u> i	PDS	10 A
21	<u> </u>	SBW	10 A
22	:::D	Daytime Running Lights	7.5 A
23	() ‡	Rear Fog Light*	(10 A)

		Circuit Protected	Amps
24	\prod i	OPTION	10 A
25	_	-	-
26		Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
27	RR R	Right Rear Power Window	20 A
28	DR	Driver's Power Window	20 A
29	<u> </u>	Front Accessory Power Socket	20 A
30	Πi	Smart	10 A
31		Driver's Power Seat Sliding	20 A
32	₩/	-	(20 A)
33	*	Driver's Power Seat Reclining	20 A
34	Πi	ABS/VSA	10 A
35	X	SRS	10 A
36	-	_	_
37	<u>l</u> i	-	(15 A)
38		Left Side Door Lock	10 A
39	_	-	-

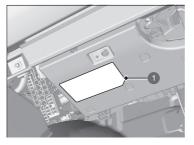
Passenger Side Interior Fuse Box

Located under the glove box.

Only the fuse No. 1 is located on the side of the fuse box. Inspection and replacement of this fuse should be done by a dealer.



Fuse No. 1
 Fuse No. 2-25

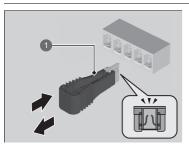


1 Fuse Label

Fuse locations are shown on the label. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

	•		•
		Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Πi	Fuse Box Main	60 A
2	\Box i	IG Main	30 A
3	<u>l</u>	IG Main 2	30 A
4	\Box i	Relay Module 1	30 A
5	<u>l</u>	Relay Module 2	30 A
6	\Box i	Fuse Box Main 2	40 A
7	<u>l</u>	Fuse Box Option	40 A
8	*	Heater Motor	30 A
9	-	-	_
10	(III)	Rear Demister	30 A
11	-	-	_
12	_	_	_
13	-	-	(40 A)
14	☐ <u>i</u>	_	(20 A)
15	Đ	Front Fog Lights	10 A
16	$\Box \mathbf{i}$	IMG	10 A
17	Πi	Audio Sub	15 A
18	$\Box \mathbf{i}$	_	(20 A)
19	fR W	Seat Heaters	(20 A)
20	$\Box \mathbf{i}$	Charge Lid	7.5 A
21	<u>l</u> i	Battery IR	7.5 A
22	$\Box \mathbf{i}$	_	(20 A)
23	Πi	EWP(IPU)	15 A
24	<u>l</u> i	Display	10 A
25	∏i]	ACC Sub	7.5 A

Inspecting and Changing Fuses



1 Fuse Puller

- **1.** Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Turn the headlights and all accessories off.
- **2.** Remove the fuse box cover.
- **3.** Inspect the small fuses inside the bonnet and the vehicle interior.
 - ▶ If there is a blown fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage on the fuse label.

Fuse Locations P. 540

Replace with a fuse of the same specified amperage.

There is a fuse puller in the fuse box A inside the bonnet.

Emergency Towing

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

■ Flatbed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.

This is the best way to transport your vehicle.

■ Wheel lift equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

Emergency Towing

NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

Make sure the parking brake is released. If you cannot release the parking brake, your vehicle must be transported by the flatbed equipment.

Parking Brake P. 416

NOTICE

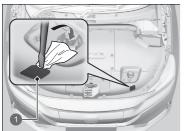
Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

If You Cannot Open the Charge Lid

■ What to Do If Unable to Open the Charge Lid

If you cannot open the charge lid, use the following procedure.

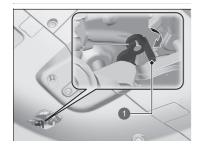


- 1. Open the bonnet.
 - **⊇** Opening the Bonnet P. 468
- **2.** Use a flat-tip screwdriver and open the lid on the motor room cover.
 - ➤ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

What to Do If Unable to Open the Charge Lid

After taking this step, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.





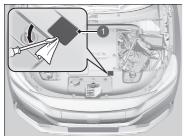
Release Lever

- 3. Pull the release lever.
 - **▶ How to Charge (AC 230 V)** P. 443
 - **▶ How to Charge (DC)** P. 446

If You Cannot Disengage the Charging Connector

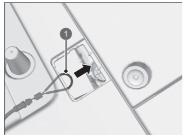
■ What to Do If Unable to Disengage the Charging Connector

If you cannot disengage the charging connector, use the following procedure.



- **1.** Make sure that charging is completed correctly.
- 2. Open the bonnet.
- **3.** Use a flat-tip screwdriver and open the lid on the motor room cover.
 - ➤ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

1 Lid



Release Cord

■ If the Remote Battery Is Weak

The charging connector cannot be disengaged if the door is locked while the keyless remote cannot be detected, such as when the battery is weak.

If the problem that you cannot disengage the charging connector occurs repeatedly, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

4. Pull the release cord.

➤ The release cord returns to its original position at the next charging.

5. The charging connector to disengage it from the inlet

Continued 547

You can disengage the charging connector by pressing the release button in the inlet by unlocking the door with the built-in key.

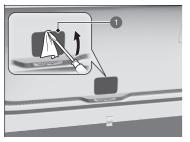
Replacing the Remote Battery P. 493

▶ If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak P. 525

If You Cannot Open the Tailgate

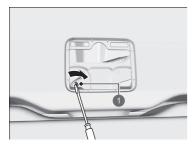
■ What to Do If Unable to Open the Tailgate

If you cannot open the tailgate, use the following procedure.



- **1.** Use a flat-tip screwdriver and open the lid on the back of the tailgate.
 - ➤ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

1 Lid



1 Lever

2. To open the tailgate, push the tailgate while pushing the lever to the right with the flat-tip screwdriver.

■What to Do If Unable to Open the Tailgate

Following up:

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

When you open the tailgate from inside, make sure there is enough space around the tailgate, and it does not hit anyone or any object.

Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

Specifications 552
Identification Numbers
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Motor
Number, and Transmission Number553
Devices that Emit Radio Waves* 554
Open Source Licence 558

* Not available on all models 551

Specifications

■ Vehicle Specifications

Model	e:N1	
Curb Weight	1,658 l 1,662 l	
Maximum Permissible Weight	2,080	kg
Maximum Permissible	Front	1,065 kg
Axle Weight	Rear	1,030 kg

^{*1:} Hong Kong and Macau models

■ 12-Volt Battery

	Capacity	36AH(5)/45AH(20)	
--	----------	------------------	--

■ Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity 2.5 L

■ Light Bulbs

Headlights (Lo	w Beam)	LED
Headlights (High	gh Beam)	LED
Position/Daytin	me Running Lights	LED
Front Turn Sign	nal Lights	LED
Front Fog Ligh	ts	LED
Side Turn Sign (on Door Mirro	3	LED
Brake Lights		LED
Taillights		LED
Rear Turn Sign	al Lights	LED
Back-Up Light((s)	LED
Rear Fog Light	*	LED
Rear Licence P	late Light	LED
High-Mount B	rake Light	LED
Charge Lights		LED
Charge Lid Lig	ht	LED
Interior Lights		
	Map Lights	LED
	Ceiling Light	LED
	Ambient Lights	LED
	Vanity Mirror Lights	LED
	Centre Pocket Light	LED
	Luggage Area Lights	LED

■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge Quantity	515 - 565 g

■ Brake Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

■ Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda BEVF-Ty	pe1	
Capacity	Change	0.34 L	

■ Climate Control Coolant

Specified	Honda Genuine Coolant
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity in the reserve tank	0.33 L

■ Tyre

	Size	225/50R18 95V
Regular	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb
Wheel Size	Regular	18 x 7 1/2J

■ Brake

Туре	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc
Parking	Electric parking brake system

■ Vehicle Dimensions

Length	4,385 ı	
. 5.	4,380 ı	mm ⁻²
Width	1,790 ı	mm
Haimbe	1,590 ı	mm* ¹
Height	1,592 ו	mm*²
Wheelbase	2,605 ı	mm*1
Wileelbase	2,607 1	mm*²
Track	Front	1,535 mm*1
ITACK	FIOIIL	1,539 mm* ²
	Rear	1,540 mm

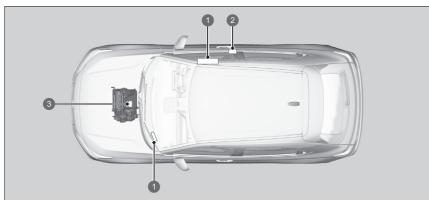
^{*2:} Except Hong Kong and Macau models

^{*1:} Hong Kong and Macau models
*2: Except Hong Kong and Macau models

Identification Numbers

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Motor Number, and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The locations of your vehicle's VIN, motor number and transmission number are shown as follows.



- Vehicle Identification Number*
- 2 Certification Label/Vehicle Identification Number/Motor Number*
- Motor Number and Transmission Number

■Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Motor Number, and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.



Cover

* Not available on all models 553

Devices that Emit Radio Waves*

The following products and system on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

Malaysian models

Self Labelling Programme (SLP)



Thai models

TCU

This telecommunication equipment conforms to Technical Standard or Technical Requirement of National Broadcasting and Telecommunications Commission (NBTC)

This radiocommunication equipment has the electromagnetic field strength in compliance with the Safety Standard for the Use of Radiocommunication Equipment on Human Health announced by the National Broadcasting and Telecommunications Commission.

Thai models

Keyless Access System BCM



เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้ ได้รับยกเว้น ไม่ต้องได้ รับใบอนุญาตให้มี ใช้ซึ่งเครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม หรือตั้งสถานีวิทยุคมนาคมตามประกาศ กสทช. เรื่อง เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม และสถานีวิทยุ คมนาคมที่ได้รับยกเว้นไม่ต้องได้รับใบอนุญาต วิทยุคมนาคมตามพระราชบัญญัติวิทยุคมนาคม พ.ศ. 2498



nanb. โทรคมนาคม ทำกับดูแลเพื่อประชาชน Call Center 1200 (โทรพรี)

This telecommunication equipment conforms to Technical Standard or Technical Requirement of National Broadcasting and Telecommunications Commission (NBTC)

- 41580430 is required for NBTC certificates.
- SAR and EMF statements are Not required for 41580430.

Below is also for your information:

The SAR marking statement is required if

- 1. Product is portable and handheld type
- 2. RF output power is over 100 mW (20 dbm) e.i.r.p

If product is non portable and non-handheld type and RF power exceed 100 mW (20 dBm) e.i.r.p, it is required EMF statement

Thai models

Keyless Access System FOB



This telecommunication equipment conforms to Technical Standard or Technical Requirement of National Broadcasting and Telecommunications Commission (NBTC)

- TP_4 is required for NBTC certificates.
- SAR and EMF statements are Not required for TP_4. Below is also for your information: The SAR marking statement is required if
- 1. Product is portable and handheld type
- 2. RF output power is over 100 mW (20 dbm) e.i.r.p

 If product is non portable and non-handheld type and RF power exceed 100 mW (20 dBm) e.i.r.p, it is required EMF statement

Thai models

Blind Spot Information System/Cross Traffic Monitor



เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้ ได้รับยกเว้น ไม่ต้องได้ รับใบอนุญาตให้มี ใช้ซึ่งเครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม หรือตั้งสถานีวิทยุคมนาคมคามประกาศ กสพช. เรื่อง เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม และสถานีวิทยุ คมนาคมที่ได้รับยกเว้นไม่ต้องได้รับใบอนุญาต วิทยุคมนาคมตามพระราชบัญญัติวิทยุคมนาคม พ.ศ. 2498



กลักษ์. โทรคมนาคม กำกับดูแลเพื่อประชาชน Call Center 1200 (โทรฟรี)

เครื่องโทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้ มีความสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานหรือข้อกำหนดของ กสทช.
เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้มีระดับการแผ่คลืนแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้าสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานความปลอดภัยต่อสุขภา
พของมนุษย์จากการใช้เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมที่คณะกรรมการกิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติประกาศกำหนด

Indonesian models

Blind Spot Information System/Cross Traffic Monitor



Dilarang melakukan perubahan spesifikasi yang dapat menimbulkan gangguan fisik dan/atau elektromagnetik terhadap lingkungan sekitarnya 102499/SDPPI/2024



4457

Open Source Licence

■ TCU open source licence

Free/Open Source Software Information

This product contains Free/Open Source Software(FOSS).

The licence information and/or the source code of such FOSS can be found at the following URL.

https://www.denso.com/global/en/opensource/tcu/honda/

Headlights 158

Numbers		Mirrors	168	Armrest	181
	401	Sound	226	Audio Remote Controls	211
12-Volt Battery Charging System	491	Steering Wheel	167	Audio System	206, 207
12-Volt Battery Charging System	E22	Agile Handling Assist	335	Adjusting the Sound	226
Indicator 99, Maintenance	552	Air Conditioning System (Climate	Control	Android Auto	252
	401	System)	196	App Shortcut Function	217
(Checking the 12-Volt Battery)	491	Air Outlet	203	Apple CarPlay	246
		Defrosting the Windscreen and		Audio Remote Controls	211
A		Windows	199	Audio System Function	208
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)	123	Dust and Pollen Filter	495	Audio/Information Screen	214
Indicator		Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode	198	Basic Operation	208
Accessories and Modifications		Remote Climate Pre-Conditioning.	201	Bluetooth® Audio	242
Accessory Power Socket		Sensor	204	Clock Setup	223
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System		Synchronization Mode	200	Display Setup	227
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low		Using Automatic Climate Control .	196	Error Messages	300
Speed Follow		Air Outlet	203	EV Menu	256
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low		Air Pressure	487, 552	FM Radio	233
Speed Follow Indicator (Amber)		Airbags	57	General Information	301
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low	100	After a Collision	59	How to Update	228
Speed Follow Indicator		Airbag Care	67	How to Update Wirelessly	231
(White/Green)	108	Event Data Recorder	1	How to Update with a USB Device	232
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low		Front Airbags (SRS)	59	iPod	236
Speed Follow Interval Indicator		Indicator	66, 102	Limitations for Manual Operation	222, 285
Adding	100	Sensors	57	MP3/WMA/AAC/FLAC/PCM/WAVE	238
Climate Control Coolant	176	Side Airbags	62	MP4/AVI/MKV/ASF/WMV	238
Washer		Side Curtain Airbags	64	On-Board Owner's Manual	213
Adjusting	470	Android Auto	252	Power Flow	261
Armrest	101	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	423	Recommended Devices	301
Front Seats		Indicator	102	Selecting an Audio Source	
Head Restraints		App Shortcut Function		Start Up	207
Headlights	170	Apple CarPlay	246	Status Area	221

System Updates	Bluetooth® Audio	242	C	
System Updates Settings	Booster Seats (For Children)		•	
USB Flash Drives	Brake Assist System		Carrying Luggage 311, 3	
USB Ports	Brake System		Certification Label 5	
Wallpaper Setup	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)		Changing Bulbs 4	
Wi-Fi Connection	Automatic Brake Hold		Charge Timer Setting 4	49
Audio/Information Screen	Brake Assist System		Charging 4	
Auto High-Beam	Fluid		AC Charger 4	39
Indicator	Foot Brake		CCS2 DC charger 4	39
Automatic Brake Hold	Indicator 96, 97, 98, 53		Chargo Indicator (Vohicle Side) 4	48
Indicator	Parking Brake		DC Charge //	46
System Indicator	Brightness Control (Instrument Panel)		High Voltage Rattery /I	54
Automatic Folding Door Mirror	Bulb Replacement		Timer 4	49
Function	Back-Up Lights		Unable to Disengage the Charging	
Automatic Intermittent Wipers	Brake Lights		Connector 5	
Average Energy Consumption	Charge Lid Light		Child Restraint System	68
Average Speed	Charge Lights		Booster Seats	89
Average specu	Daytime Running Lights		Child Restraint System for Infants	71
_	Front Fog Lights		Child Restraint System for Small Children	72
В	Front Turn Signal Lights		installing a Child Restraint System With a Lai	p/
Battery	Headlights		Shoulder Seat Belt	84
12-Volt Battery Charging System	High-Mount Brake Light		Larger Children	88
Indicator 99, 532	Position Lights		Rearward Facing Child Restraint System	71
Charging	Rear Fog Light		Selecting a Child Restraint System	73
Energy Economy	Rear Licence Plate Light			86
High Voltage	Rear Turn Signal Lights			68
If the 12-Volt Battery is Dead 528	Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator	4/3	Childproof Door Locks 1	42
Safety Checklist	Lights	470	Childproof Door Locks 1	42
Belts (Seat)	Taillights 4		Cloaning the Exterior 5	00
Beverage Holders	Bulb Specifications 4		Cleaning the Interior 4	97
Blind spot information System 340	Build Specifications	332		
Dinia spot information system				

Climate Control System	196
Air Outlet	203
Changing the Mode	196
Defrosting the Windscreen and	
Windows	199
Dust and Pollen Filter	495
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode	198
Remote Climate Pre-Conditioning	201
Sensors	204
Synchronization Mode	200
Using Automatic Climate Control	196
Clock Setup	223
CMBS (Collision Mitigation Braking	
System)	349
System) Coat Hooks	349 186
Coat Hooks Collision Mitigation Braking System	
Coat Hooks	186
Coat Hooks Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)	186 349
Coat Hooks Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Console Box	186 349 184
Coat Hooks Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Console Box Controls	186 349 184 127
Coat Hooks Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Console Box Controls Cooling System	186 349 184 127 472
Coat Hooks Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Console Box Controls Cooling System Coolant	186 349 184 127 472 472
Coat Hooks Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Console Box Controls Cooling System Coolant Overheating	186 349 184 127 472 472 531
Coat Hooks Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Console Box Controls Cooling System Coolant Overheating Creeping (Transmission)	186 349 184 127 472 472 531 319

ט	
Daytime Running Lights	157
Dead 12-Volt Battery	528
Deceleration Paddle Selector	326
Indicator	100
Defaulting All the Settings	281
Deflation Warning System	336
Calibration	338
Indicator104,	536
Defrosting the Windscreen and	
Windows	199
Demister	165
Devices that Emits Radio Waves	554
Dimming	
Headlights	152
Rearview Mirror	168
Display Setup	
Door Mirrors	
Doors	128
Door and Tailgate Open Message	42
Keys	128
Locking/Unlocking the Doors	
from the Inside	140
Locking/Unlocking the Doors	
from the Outside	
Lockout Prevention System	
Drive Mode Switch	
Driver Information Interface	116
Switching the Display	116

Driving	416 319 315
E	
Elapsed Time	121
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System	
Indicator	534
Electric Vehicle Precautions	15
Electronic Gear Selector	28
Emergency Stop Signal	425
Emergency Towing	
Energy Economy	455
EPS (Electric Power Steering) System	534
Indicator	103
EV Menu	256
Exterior Care (Cleaning)	500
Exterior Mirrors	
F	
Features	205
Filter	
Dust and Pollen	495
Flat Tyre	509
Floor Mat	198

Fluids		HFT Buttons	282	1
Brake	477	HFT Menus	286	· Live City of the Novel Const.
Climate Control	475	HFT Status Display	284	Identification Numbers 553
Cooling System	472	Limitations for Manual Operation	285	Motor and Transmission
Windscreen Washer	478	Making a Call	296	Vehicle Identification
FM Radio	233	Options During a Call	299	If You Cannot Disengage the Charging
Fog Lights	155	Phone Setup	288	Connector 547
Folding Down the Rear Seats	175	Receiving a Call	298	If You Cannot Open the Charge Lid 546
Foot Brake	419	Ringtone	290	If You Cannot Open the Tailgate
Front Airbags (SRS)	59	Hazard Warning Button	6	Illumination Control
Front Fog Light Indicator	106	Head Restraints	178	Immobilizer System
Front Seats		Headlights		Indicator
Adjusting	172	Adjuster	158	Indicators 94
Front Wide View Camera		Aiming	479	12-Volt Battery Charging System 99, 532
Fuses	540	Auto High-Beam	159	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed
Inspecting and Changing	544	Dimming	152	Follow (Amber)
Locations 540, 541, 542,		Operating	152	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed
		Heated Door Mirror Button		Follow (White/Green)
C		High Beam Indicator	106	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed
G		High Beams	153	Follow Interval
Gauges	. 114	High Voltage Battery		Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)
Glass (care) 497,	, 501	Charging	438	Auto High-Beam
Glove Box	184	Energy Economy	455	Automatic Brake Hold
		Gauge	114	Automatic Brake Hold System 98, 420
Н		Hill Start Assist System	317	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)
п		Honda SENSING	345	(Amber)
Hands-Free Telephone System	282	Honda Sensing	30	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)
Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook a	and	ğ		(Grey)
Call History	291			Deceleration Paddle Selector
Automatic Transferring	290			ECON Mode
Favourite Contacts	292			Electric Power Steering (EPS)
				System 103 534

Front Fog Light 106
High Beam 106
Immobilizer System 107
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)
(Amber) 109
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)
(White/Green) 109
Lights On 106
Low Charge (Amber) 101
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning
System 104, 536
NORMAL Mode 100, 329
Parking Brake and Brake System
(Amber)
Parking Brake and Brake System
(Red)
Power System
Ready
Rear Fog Light
Road Departure Mitigation (Amber) 110
Road Departure Mitigation (Grey) 111
Road Departure Mitigation System Steering
Assist Auto OFF
Safety Support (Amber) 111
Safety Support (Green/Grey) 113
Seat Belt Reminder 101
Security System Alarm
Shift Position
SPORT Mode 100, 329
Supplemental Restraint System 102
System Message 105

Transmission System	537
Turn Signal and Hazard Warning	
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF	
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System	
nstant Energy Consumption	
nstrument Panel	
Brightness Control	
nterior Convenience Items	
nterior Lights	182
nterior Rearview Mirror	
Pod	236
•	
acking Points	522
ump Starting	528
<	
•	
Key Number Tag	
Keyless Lockout Prevention	
(eys	
Lockout Prevention	
Number Tag	
Rear Door Won't Open	
Remote Transmitter	137
Types and Functions	128

L

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)
Lead Car Departure Notification
System
Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android
Auto
Lights
Bulb Replacement
High Beam Indicator
Interior
Light Switches
Lights On Indicator
Luggage Area Lights
Load Limits
Locking/Unlocking 128
Childproof Door Locks
From Inside
From Outside 131
Keys 128
Using a Key138
Lockout Prevention System 139
Low Battery Charge 532
Low Beams
Low Charge Indicator (Amber) 101
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength 130
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System
Indicator 104, 536

Lower Anchorages	80	Mirrors	168	P	
Luggage (Load Limit)	313	Door		Parking Brake	116
Luggage Area Cover	190	Interior Rearview	168	Parking Brake and Brake Systen	
Luggage Area Lights	183, 552	Modifications (and Accessories)	504	(Amber)	
Luggage Hook	187	Motor		Parking Brake and Brake Systen	•
		Coolant	472	(Red)96	
М		Number	553	Parking Sensor System90	
IVI		Motor Room Cover	470	,	
Maintenance	457	MP3/WMA/AAC/FLAC/PCM/WAVE	238	Passing Indicators Phone	
12-Volt Battery		MP4/AVI/MKV/ASF/WMV	238	Playing <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio	
Brake Fluid		Multi-View Rear Camera	436	POWER Button	
Cleaning				Power Flow	
Climate Control		N		Power System	201
Climate Control Coolant		14		Turning on	215
Cooling System		Navigation		Power System Indicator	
Precautions		NORMAL Mode Indicator		Power Windows	
Remote Transmitter		Numbers (Identification)	553	POWER/CHARGE Gauge	
Replacing Light Bulbs	479			_	
Safety		0		Precautions While Driving Rain	
Transmission Fluid		_			
Tyres	487	Odometer		Pregnant Women	
Under the Bonnet	467	On-Board Owner's Manual		Puncture (Tyre)	509
Washer	478	Open the Owner's Manual			
Wiper	482	Open Source Licences 3	02, 558	R	
Making Good Use of Your Honda	Electric	Opening/Closing		Radio (FM)	222
Vehicle	12	Bonnet		Range	
Map Light Switches	183	Power Windows		Ready Indicator	
Maximum Charge Setting	451	Tailgate		Rear Demister	
Maximum Permissible Weight	313, 552	Other Interior Convenience Items		Rear Fog Light Indicator	
Meters, Gauges	114	Outside Temperature Display		Rear Seat Reminder	
		Overheating	531	Rear Seats	
				Near Jeals	1/3

Rearview Mirror 168	Reminder	46	Switches	
Regenerative Energy and Regenerative	Warning Indicator 4	6, 101	(Around the Steering Wheel) 6	, 7, 150
Braking 18	Seats	171	System Message Indicator	
Remote Climate Pre-Conditioning 201	Adjusting	171	System Updates	228
Remote Transmitter 137	Front Seats	171	•	
Replacement	Rear Seats	175	T	
Bulbs	Security System	145	Т	
Front Wiper Blade Rubber 482	Immobilizer System Indicator	107	Tailgate	143
Fuses 540, 542, 543, 544	Security System Alarm Indicator	107	TCU Open Source Licence	558
Rear Wiper Blade Rubber 485	Super Locking	147	Temperature	
Remote Battery	Selecting a Child Restraint System		Outside Temperature Display	115
Resetting a Trip Meter 119	Selecting the Desired Air Outlet		Temperature Sensor	115
Road Departure Mitigation 362	Shift Button		Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre	509
On and Off 367	Operation	322	Temporary Repair Kit (TRK)	509
	Shift Position Indicator	99	Tie-down Anchorages	187
•	Shifting (Transmission)	320	Timer	449
S	Shoulder Anchorage		Tools	508
Safe Driving 37	Side Airbags	62	Towing Your Vehicle	
Safety Labels 91	Side Curtain Airbags		Emergency	545
Safety Message 0	Specifications	552	Traffic Jam Assist	400
Safety Support 123	Speedometer		Transmission 3	19, 320
Safety Support Indicator (Amber) 111, 112	SPORT Mode Indicator		Creeping	319
Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey) 113	SRS Airbags (Airbags)	59	Fluid	474
Seat Belts 43	Indicator		Indicator	99
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage 51	Steering Wheel	167	Number	553
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners	Adjusting	167	Operating the Shift Button	322
Checking 55	Stopping		Shift Position Indicator	99, 322
Fastening	Storage Items		Warning Message	537
Installing a Child Restraint System	Super Locking		Trip Meter 1	
with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt 84	Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)		TRK (Temporary Repair Kit)	
Pregnant Women 54	Indicator			

Troubleshooting
12-Volt Battery Is Dead 528
Blown Fuse 540, 542, 543, 544
Brake Pedal Vibrates
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door 35
Charge Lid Won't Open 546
Charging Connector Won't Disengage 547
Emergency Towing 545
Noise When Braking 36
Overheating531
Power System Won't Start 523
Puncture (Flat Tyre) 509
Rear Door Won't Open
Tailgate Won't Open 549
Warning Indicators94
Turn Signals
Indicators (Instrument Panel) 105
Turning on the Power 315
Does Not Activate 523
Tyres 487
Air Pressure 552
Checking and Maintaining 487
Inspection
Puncture (Flat Tyre) 509
Rotation
Wear Indicators 488

U	
Unlocking the Doors	131
Unlocking the Front Doors	
from the Inside	140
USB Flash Drives	238, 301
USB Ports	209
V	
Vanity Mirrors	9
Vehicle Identification Numbers	553
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA)	333
OFF Button	334
OFF Indicator	103
System Indicator	103
VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist)	333
W	
Wallpaper	224
Warning Indicator On/Blinking	532
Warning Labels	
Wear Indicators (Tyre)	488

 Wi-Fi Connection
 245

 Window Washers
 162

 Adding/Refilling Fluid
 478

 Switch
 162

 Windows (Opening and Closing)
 148

 Windscreen
 162

 Cleaning
 497, 501

 Defrosting/Defogging
 165, 199

Washer Fluid	478
Wiper Blades	482
Wipers and Washers	162
Wipers and Washers	162
Automatic Intermittent Wipers	163
Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades	482
Front	162
Rear	164
Wireless Charger	193
WMA	238
Worn Tyres	487